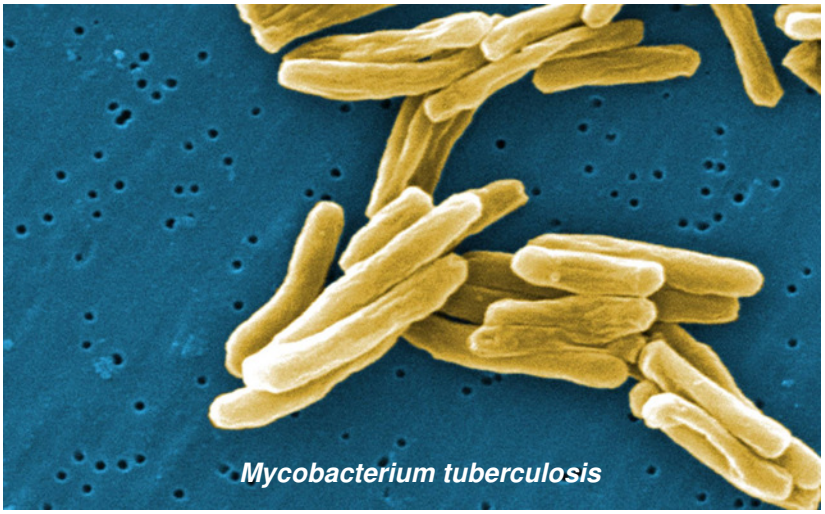
CDC Tuberculosis Surveillance Data Training



Report of Verified Case of Tuberculosis (RVCT)

Self-Study Modules Facilitator Manual

This manual is designed for facilitators who will teach health care staff how to accurately complete the RVCT. It contains the same content as the RVCT Self-Study Modules Participant Manual, which includes the instructions for how to complete each item on the RVCT, and exercises that will help participants apply the instructions to life-like situations. It also includes a facilitator guide and answers to the exercises.

June, 2009

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
National Center for HIV/AIDS, Viral Hepatitis, STD, and TB Prevention
Division of Tuberculosis Elimination

This document was prepared by

The Report of a Verified Case of Tuberculosis (RVCT) Instructions and Self-Study Modules were prepared by the following branches within the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Division of Tuberculosis Elimination:

Surveillance, Epidemiology, and Outbreak Investigations Branch
Elvin Magee, MPH, MS
Lilia P. Manangan, RN, MPH
Carla Winston, PhD
Valerie Robison, DDS, MPH, PhD
Thomas R. Navin, MD

Communications, Education, and Behavioral Studies Branch
Cheryl Tryon, MS
Peri Hopkins, MPH
Trang Nguyen, MPH
Sarah Segerlind, MPH
Teresa Goss
Sherry Brown
Blen Mekuria, BA

Field Services and Evaluation Branch
Alstead Forbes
Bruce Heath

Others contributing to the production of this publication:

CDC Reviewers
Phil LoBue, MD, FACP, FCCP
John Jereb, MD
Sundari Mase, MD, MPH
Wanda Walton, PhD, MEd
Kashef Ijaz, MD, MPH
Amera Khan, MPH
Ann Lanner, BA
Marie S. Morgan, BA, ELS
Robert Pratt, BS
Lori Armstrong, PhD
Carla Jeffries, MPH
Jose Becerra, MD, MPH
Allison Maiuri, MPH
Ijeoma Agulefo, MPH
Glenda T. Newell, CSA

National Center for Health Marketing, Division of Creative Services
Sarah Cote
Howard Hall

RVCT Revision Work Group Members, 2001-2007

Janice Boutotte, PhD, RN
N. Alex Bowler, MPH, FACHE
James Cobb
Theresa Crisp, MPH
Mayleen Jack Ekiek, MD
Kimberly Field, RN, PHN, MSN
Michael E Fleenor, MD, MPH
Lorena Jeske, RN, MN
Stephen E. Hughes, PhD
Scott Jones
Yvonne Luster-Harvey, MPH
Debbie Merz, MS
Masahiro Narita, MD
Mary Naughton, MD, MPH
Lynelle Phillips, RN, MPH
Shameer Poonja, MPH
Carol Pozsik, RN, MPH
Randall Reves, MD, MSc
Maria G. Rodriguez
Diana Schneider, DrPH, MA
Barbara Seaworth, MD
Sharon Sharnprapai, MS
Muriel Silin, MPH
Wendy Mills Sutherland, MPH
Jacinthe Thomas, MPH
Janice Westenhouse, MPH

RVCT Reviewers

Cecilia Teresa T. Arciaga
Sherri Austin
Angelito Bravo, MD
Gayle L. Canfield, RN
Smita G. Chatterjee, MS
Christine A. Feaster, M(ASCP)^{CM}, M(NRM)
Kitty B. Herrin, MA, PHD
Pat F. Infield, RN
Harvey L. Marx, Jr.
Sandra A. Morris, MPH
Kathleen Moser, MD, MPH
Ellen Murray, RN, BSN
Rebbie M. Ortega
Lillian T. Pirog, RN, BS, PNP
Vicki Randle, MPH, RN
Paul Regan, PHA
Kristina Schaller
Gladys Simon
Barbara Simpkins
Mary K. Sisk, RN, CIC
Sarah Macinski Sperry, MS
Richard A. Stevens, DrPH, MPH, MSHSA, MS
Barbara L. Stone, MSPH
Jason Stout, MD
Sharon J. Thompson, RN
Marie P. Villa, RN
Terri Wilson
Josephine L. Yumul, MSc
Edward Zuroweste, MD

CDC would also like to thank all of the state and local health departments whose staff participated in the field tests.

Report of Verified Case of Tuberculosis Training Course
Facilitator Guide

The Report of Verified Case of Tuberculosis (RVCT) is the national tuberculosis (TB) surveillance data reporting form. All jurisdictions report these data to CDC on each newly reported case of TB. The results are used for determining the TB morbidity case rates for the United States, U.S. Territories, U.S. Island Areas and U.S. Outlying Areas.

Facilitator Manual for the RVCT Training Course
The RVCT Self-Study Modules Facilitator Manual is designed for facilitators who will teach the RVCT Training Course to health care staff and includes

- **Facilitator Guide**
  The Facilitator Guide (this section of the Facilitator Manual) includes suggestions on how to teach the RVCT Training Course to health care staff, and the most effective methods for training adults. The page footers for this portion of the Facilitator Manual are labeled Facilitator Guide.

  The Facilitator Guide is divided into three sections that provide
  - An overview of facilitating the RVCT Training Course
  - Information on training basics
  - Suggestions on how to facilitate each section of the course

  The table on the following page indicates the topics included in each section of the Facilitator Guide.

- **Self-Study Modules with Answers**
  The RVCT Self-Study Modules Facilitator Manual includes the same content provided in the RVCT Self-Study Modules Participant Manual. The Participant Manual is used by the course participants. The modules integrate the instructions for completing each of the items with exercises that enable participants to apply the content to life-like situations. However, the exercises in the Facilitator Manual include the answers and notes that explain some of the answers.

  The page numbers for this portion of the Facilitator Manual are the same as for the Participant Manual. This helps for referring to page numbers during the training.

Facilitator Guide Topics

Overview of Facilitating the RVCT Training Course

Note: Some information in this Facilitator Guide is also located within the Introduction section of the RVCT Self-Study Modules. It is mentioned here too, so that it is readily available to the facilitator.

Purpose of the Training

The purpose of the RVCT Training Course is to help participants learn how to accurately complete the revised RVCT form.

RVCT Training Course Objectives

After working through the RVCT Self-Study Modules, and participating in discussions, participants will be able to

- Distinguish between the 3 reports included in the RVCT form
- Recognize the items on the RVCT form
- Use the RVCT Instructions to determine how to complete the RVCT
- Accurately complete the RVCT form

Description of the RVCT Self-Study Modules

The RVCT Self-Study Modules are a set of interactive print-based modules that have been designed to provide training for health care staff in how to accurately complete the RVCT. Included are the instructions for how to complete each item on the RVCT and exercises that will help participants apply the instructions to life-like situations.

There are two versions of the self-study modules:

- **RVCT Self-Study Modules Participant Manual**
  The participant manual is designed for health care staff who will learn how to complete the RVCT, either as self-study, or during a facilitator-led training course.

- **RVCT Self-Study Modules Facilitator Manual** (this manual)
  The facilitator manual is designed for facilitators who will teach health care staff how to accurately complete the RVCT. It contains the same content as the RVCT Self-Study Modules Participant Manual. It also includes a facilitator guide (this section of the facilitator manua), and the answers to the exercises which are integrated into the exercises.

The RVCT Self-Study Modules sections are described in the table below.

RVCT Self-Study Modules

RVCT Self-Study Modules
Introduction Provides an overview of the RVCT form, the RVCT instructions, and the RVCT Self-Study Modules, as well as information on continuing education and how to order RVCT materials.
Modules A – E The modules provide instructions for each of the 49 items on the RVCT form. Each item includes exercises that enable participants to apply the instructions to life-like situations. • **Module A – RVCT (page 1) Items 1 – 16** • **Module B – RVCT (page 2) Items 17 – 25** • **Module C – RVCT (page 3) Items 26 – 37** • **Module D – The Initial Drug Susceptibility Report (Follow Up Report – 1) Items 38 – 40** • **Module E – The Case Completion Report (Follow Up Report – 2) Items 41 – 49**
Appendices • **Appendix A – Tuberculosis Case Definition for Public Health Surveillance** • **Appendix B – Recommendations for Reporting and Counting Tuberculosis Cases** • **Appendix C – Anatomic Codes** • **Appendix D – Reporting Area Codes** • **Appendix E – Country Codes** • **Appendix F – Glossary** • **Appendix G – Answer Key for Exercises**

How the Modules Can be Used

The Report of Verified Case of Tuberculosis Self-Study Modules can be used in the following ways:

1. **For individuals to learn in a self-study format**
   Health care workers can use the modules according to their needs
   - Working through them at their own pace
     - Completing the whole set of modules without interruption
     - Completing one module at a time (e.g., one module per day)
   - Using the modules as a reference

2. **As part of a 2-day facilitator-led training course**
   The self-study modules can be used as part of a training course that is led by a facilitator.
   - Participants work through the modules
   - Facilitators lead group discussions about the instructions and the exercises, and engage the participants in learning how to use the RVCT

   Options for conducting the facilitated training at the work place include:
   - Working through one module (or section of a module) at a time
   - Conducting trainings during lunch-and-learn sessions over a period of days or weeks

The rest of this Facilitator Guide refers to the 2-day RVCT facilitator-led training course

About the Facilitators

Criteria for the facilitators
The facilitators who teach the RVCT Training Course should meet **ALL** of the following criteria:

- Have expertise in surveillance, epidemiology, or TB program management
- Have experience using the RVCT and/or other TB surveillance collection tools
- Be able to teach others how to accurately complete the RVCT

Role of the facilitator
The facilitator plays a unique role in facilitating the learning experience of the adult learner. To that end, the facilitator should

- Motivate participants to accomplish course outcomes
- Encourage participants to share their experiences and participate in the discussions
- Answer questions and clarify complex issues

Optimum number of facilitators - 2
The optimum number of facilitators is 2. This is not required, but it can be helpful to have a co-facilitator. It is important for co-facilitators to determine how to work together before the training. Co-facilitator tasks may include

- Teaching different portions of the course
- Providing additional expertise when answering questions
- Providing a back-up in case one facilitator gets sick
- Using a variety of presentation styles, which can be engaging for the participants
- Assisting with other tasks such as
    - Writing on the flip chart (this can save a lot of time because the facilitator presenting can concentrate on training rather than writing)
    - Helping to keep track of time
    - Passing out course materials
    - Handling problems

About the Participants

The target audience
The target audience for the RVCT Training Course includes health care staff who should be able to do **AT LEAST ONE** of the following:

- Collect the data from patients
- Complete the RVCT form (or local TB case reporting form specified by the reporting jurisdiction)
- Enter data from the RVCT into the reporting system
- Monitor TB program data collection accuracy
- Analyze data from the RVCT

Role of the participants
The role of the participants is to

- Read instructions and work through exercises (on their own)
- Participate in group discussions about the instructions for the RVCT items and the exercises

Participants do most of the work and/or talking during the discussions.

Optimum number of participants for the RVCT Training Course – not more that 20
For an optimum learning experience and management of the course, it is recommended that the number of participants for the **RVCT Training Course not exceed 20 participants.** This number is small enough for all participants to be fully engaged, yet large enough for a variety of experiences and viewpoints to be represented. Also, each participant needs

- To have enough space at a table or desk to work through the modules
- To feel comfortable commenting and asking questions. Too many people in a room can intimidate some participants from contributing.
- To receive individual attention from the facilitator. Too many participants means that the facilitator provides less attention to each participant.

Suggested Training Format

The following suggested training format has been field-tested and determined to be an effective method for teaching this course to health care staff.

This is **not** a standard training in which the facilitator teaches the content through lectures with PowerPoint slides. It is an interactive skills-based training in which

1. **Participants work through a small section of the modules**
   The participants work through the modules by reading small sections (about 3-7 items at a time) of the RVCT Self-Study Modules and completing the exercises for that section.

2. **Facilitator leads a group discussion about the content and answers to the exercises**
   After all participants have worked through the section of the modules, the facilitator leads a group discussion about the 3-7 items to review the content and answers to the exercises for that section.

   Participants then work through another section and the facilitator leads a discussion. This format is continued until all of the items in the modules have been covered.

This method of participants working through a few items at a time followed by a group discussion is effective because participants

- Receive immediate review of and feedback on the content and the exercises
- Share their questions, experience, and expertise with each other
- Interact in a participatory learning environment
- Can work at their own speed, but still participate in group activities
- Develop skill in using the RVCT instructions

The table on the following page provides an overview of the RVCT training course.

Overview of the RVCT Training Course

Activity	Description	Estimated Time	Materials Needed
Day 1			
Welcome	Facilitator welcomes participants	5 minutes	
Introductions	Facilitators, participants, and observers introduce themselves	1 minute per person	• Flip chart
RVCT Course Overview	Facilitator provides a short introduction to the course, and explains the course agenda and materials, ground rules, parking lot, and housekeeping. (See the description for ground rules and parking lot on page 28 of this Facilitator Guide.)	45 minutes	• Computer • LCD projector • PowerPoint presentation • Handout of slides (optional) • Flip chart and markers
Introduction section (of RVCT Self-Study Modules)	Participants briefly read through the Introduction section	10 minutes	• RVCT Self-Study Modules
	Facilitator leads a brief discussion to answer questions about the Introduction section	5 minutes	
Modules A–B	Participants work through 3–7 items at a time by reading the instructions and completing the exercises for those items	Varies (see sample agenda)	• RVCT Self-Study Modules A – B • Answer Sheet
	Facilitator leads a group discussion about the 3–7 items to review the answers to the exercises, clarify complex issues, and answer questions		
Day 2			
Modules C–E	Participants work through 3–7 items at a time	Varies (see sample agenda)	• RVCT Self-Study Modules C – E • Answer Sheet
	Facilitator leads a group discussion about the 3–7 items		
RVCT Self-Study Posttest	Participants take a 30-item posttest	30 minutes	• RVCT Self-Study Posttest • Answer Sheet
End-of-Course Evaluation	Participants complete the end-of-course evaluation	10 minutes	End-of-Course Evaluation
RVCT Self-Study Posttest Review	Facilitator leads discussion on the answers to the posttest. Participants can grade their own tests	30 minutes	• RVCT Self-Study Posttest Answer Key
Course Closing	The facilitators provide closing remarks	5 minutes	

Sample Agenda

The following is a sample agenda for facilitators that includes all of the training activities and estimated time frames. There is a simpler sample agenda available for participants on the CD ROM that is included with this manual. Suggested times are based on the results of the RVCT Self-Study Module field tests and trainings conducted by CDC. Each training is different, and times should be flexible to accommodate the needs and interests of the participants and local jurisdictions.

Sample Facilitators' Agenda
Day 1

Start Time	End Time	Total Min.	Description
8:00	8:05	5	**Welcome and Importance of TB Surveillance Data**
8:05	8:20	15	**Introductions** (can vary depending on number of participants)
8:20	9:05	45	**Course Overview, Agenda, Materials, Ground Rules, Parking Lot, etc.**
9:05	9:15	15	**Introduction section** (participants read this section)
9:15	9:25	5	**Discussion about Introduction section**
			Module A – RVCT page 1
9:25	10:10	50	**Items 1 – 6** (introduce section and participants work)
10:10	10:25	15	**Break**
10:25	11:15	50	**Discussion about Items 1 – 6** (discussion and summary)
11:15	11:40	25	**Items 7 – 13** (introduce section and participants work)
11:40	12:00	20	**Discussion about Items 7 – 13** (discussion and summary)
12:00	1:00	60	**Lunch**
1:00	1:20	20	**Discussion about Items 7 – 13** (discussion and summary) **(continued)**
1:20	1:45	25	**Items 14 – 16** (introduce section and participants work)
1:45	2:10	25	**Discussion about Items 14 – 16** (discussion and summary)
			Module B – RVCT page 2
2:10	2:30	20	**Items 17 – 20** (introduce section and participants work)
2:30	2:45	15	**Break**
2:45	3:00	15	**Discussion about Items 17 – 20** (discussion and summary)
3:00	3:10	10	**Items 21 – 22 B** (introduce section and participants work)
3:10	3:25	15	**Discussion about Items 21 – 22B** (discussion and summary)
3:25	3:40	15	**Items 23 – 25** (introduce section and participants work)
3:40	4:05	25	**Discussion about Items 23 – 25** (discussion and summary)

Day 2

Start Time	End Time	Total Min.	Description
8:00	8:15	15	**Review of Day 1**
			Module C – RVCT page 3
8:15	8:35	20	**Items 26 – 29** (introduce section and participants work)
8:35	8:55	20	**Discussion about Items 26 – 29** (discussion and summary)
8:55	9:15	20	**Items 30 – 34** (introduce section and participants work)
9:15	9:30	15	**Discussion about Items 30 – 34** (discussion and summary)
9:30	9:45	15	**Items 35 – 37** (introduce section and participants work)
9:45	10:05	20	**Discussion about Items 35 – 37** (discussion and summary)
10:05	10:20	15	**Break**
			Module D – Follow Up Report 1
10:20	10:40	20	**Items 38 – 40** (introduce section and participants work)
10:40	10:50	10	**Discussion about Items 38 – 40** (discussion and summary)
10:50	11:05	15	**Items 41 – 42** (introduce section and participants work)
11:05	11:20	15	**Discussion about Items 41 – 42** (discussion and summary)
11:20	11:35	15	**Items 43 – 46** (introduce section and participants work)
11:35	11:55	20	**Discussion about Items 43 – 46** (discussion and summary)
11:55	12:55	60	**Lunch**
			Module E – Follow Up Report 2
12:55	1:15	20	**Items 47 – 49** (introduce section and participants work)
1:15	1:45	30	**Discussion about Items 47 – 49** (discussion and summary)
1:45	2:15	30	**Posttest**
2:15	2:25	10	**End-of-Course Evaluation**
2:25	2:40	15	**Break**
2:40	3:10	30	**Review of Posttest Answers**
3:10	3:15	5	**Course Closing**

RVCT Training Course Materials

You will need the following materials when you teach this course. These materials are available on the RVCT Materials CD ROM, or they can be ordered from CDC.

Materials	Description	Copies Needed for	
		Facilitators	Participants
RVCT Self-Study Modules Participant Manual	Participants use these modules during the training to read the content and the instructions for completing each item on the RVCT, as well as to work through the exercises	**No**	**Yes**
RVCT Self-Study Modules Facilitator Manual	The Facilitator Manual includes everything that is in the participant Self-Study Modules, plus • Facilitator Guide • Step-by-step suggestions for facilitating each section of the modules • Answers to the exercises and notes that explain some of the answers, included with each exercise, as well as at the end of the modules • Additional training materials (located on the CD ROM)	**Yes**	**No**
RVCT Form (optional)	Facilitators can provide copies of the **actual** RVCT form so participants know what the RVCT looks like. In the manual, at the beginning of the instructions for each item, there is an image of the item from the RVCT form. **The only way to get copies of the RVCT form is to order them from** GNewell@cdc.gov.	**Yes**	**Yes**

The RVCT Materials CD ROM that comes with the Facilitator Manual includes the following:

- **RVCT Self-Study Modules Participant Manual**
- **RVCT Self-Study Modules Facilitator Manual** (this manual)
  Additional training materials are included that will need to be printed for the training. The files are listed in the table below.
- **RVCT Instruction Manual** (Includes only the instructions for how to complete each item on the RVCT. It can be used as a reference guide when completing the RVCT.)
- **RVCT Self-Study Modules Exercises** (Includes only the exercises from the Self-Study Modules. It does not include the instructions for how to complete each item on the RVCT. Facilitators can use and adapt the exercises for local jurisdictions)
- **RVCT Materials Description**
- **RVCT Materials Order Form**

For a more complete description of the training materials, see the Introduction section of the RVCT Self-Study Modules in this manual, or the RVCT Materials Description document on the CD ROM.

Copies of the manuals can also be ordered free of charge from CDC by e-mailing or faxing to CDC the RVCT Order Form. The order form is available on the RVCT Materials CD ROM. The materials can also be downloaded from the RVCT FTP site (see page 17 in the Introduction section of this manual for more information).

Additional Training Materials Needed for the RVCT Training Course

These documents will be needed to be printed for the RVCT Training Course for the RVCT Training Course. The document files are on the CD ROM that is included with the Facilitator Manual. These files are in various formats (Microsoft Word, PowerPoint, or Excel). You can adapt these materials to meet your needs.

Materials	Description	Make Copies for	
		Facilitators	Participants
List of Materials for Training	List of materials supplies to determine the quantities needed for the training. The Excel file calculates the total number of copies needed for each item.	**Yes**	**No**
Facilitators' Agenda	Detailed agenda with specific times indicated to help manage the training for facilitators. The Excel file includes formulas for re-calculating the time (see the file "Facilitators' Agenda - How to use the Excel agenda" for instructions).	**Yes**	**No**
Participants' Agenda	Brief agenda that provides an overview of the training for course participants	**Yes**	**Yes**
RVCT Course Overview Slides	PowerPoint slides that provide an overview of the course	**No**	**No**
Handouts of RVCT Course Overview Slides	Handouts of the PowerPoint slides that provide an overview of the course	**Yes**	**Optional**
RVCT Self-Study Posttest	A 30-item posttest that includes multiple choice and matching questions to determine participants' knowledge of the RVCT	**Yes**	**Yes**
RVCT Self-Study Posttest Answer Key	The answer key for the facilitator to use when reviewing the answers of the posttest with the participants.	**Yes**	**No**
Answer Sheets	Blank answer sheets that can be used by participants to record their answers for the module exercises and the posttest. The completed sheets can be turned in to the facilitator who will grade them to determine the results of the course. The participants can also record their answers to the exercises in the modules so they can refer to them later on.	**No**	**Yes**
End-of-Course Evaluation	A sample evaluation form that can be used at the end of the course	**No**	**Yes**
Contact List	A sample form that lists contact information for facilitators, participants, and observers	**Yes**	**Optional**

Adapting the RVCT Training Materials

Some states use a modified version of the RVCT or data collection tool that is unique to their jurisdiction. For example, some jurisdictions may include additional items on their form and may call it something other than the RVCT. Regardless of the data collection tool or format, all variables listed on the RVCT must be collected and must use the same instructions for entering data.

Because some states use a modified version of the RVCT or a data collection tool that is unique to their jurisdiction, trainers may want to adapt the RVCT Training Materials for their setting.

RVCT Instructions (please do NOT adapt)
The instructions for each of the 49 items on the RVCT should **not** be revised by local jurisdictions because **changing the instructions could alter the data results**. The instructions have been extensively reviewed and field tested by a wide range of health care professionals throughout the United States and are considered final as of June 2009. Therefore, all of the documents that include the instructions are provided as PDF files only.

RVCT Exercises
The exercises located in the RVCT Self-Study Manuals have been designed to provide a method for course participants to practice applying the instructions to life-like situations. These also have been extensively reviewed and field tested. The exercises were developed to respond to a broad group of situations at the national level. The exercises have been provided in a Microsoft Word document in case you want to adapt them for your setting.

RVCT Additional Training Materials
There are additional training materials such as course agendas, course overview slides, and an end-of-course evaluation. These are included on the CD ROM and the FTP site in various formats. You can adapt these for your use.

Steps for Facilitating the 2-Day RVCT Training Course

There are five steps used to facilitate a section of the RVCT Training Course.

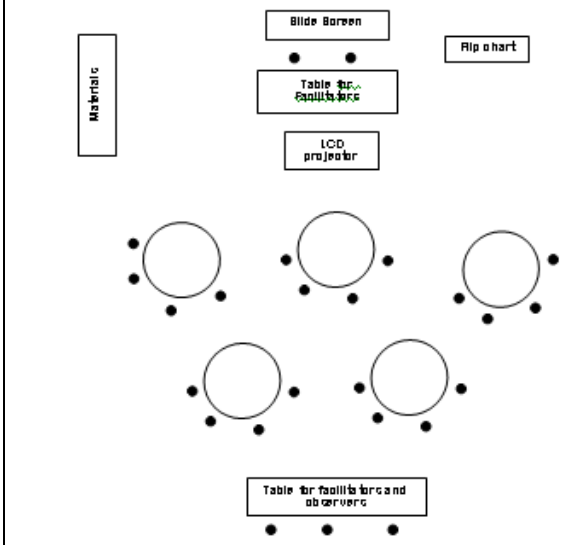
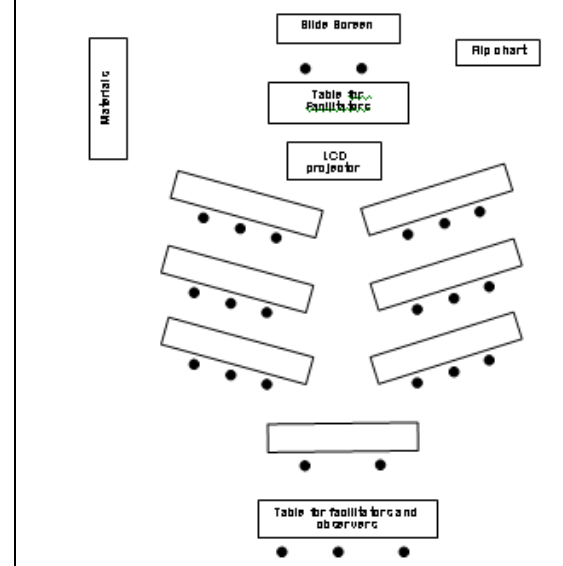
1. Be Prepared to Facilitate

- **Know your audience**
  - What experience and skills do they have regarding the RVCT?
  - What are their roles with regards to the RVCT?
  - What are their job positions?
  - What are their first languages and cultural backgrounds?
  - How will they use the skills and knowledge from the course?

- **Know the content of what you are training about** – this is very critical to the success of the training. **Even a facilitator with the best of training skills can NOT hide the fact that he/she does NOT know the content.**
  - Know the content prior to the training (not at the last minute) so you will be prepared.
  - Know the layout of the materials so you know where things are located.
  - Read the instructions to the RVCT thoroughly so you can answer participants' questions.
  - Review the exercises.
  - Anticipate areas of confusion. The table of contents of the RVCT Self-Study Modules. highlights the items that are the most confusing.
  - Be prepared to answer questions, explain concepts, and clarify issues.

- Develop additional case studies if necessary to help participants understand the items and the instructions

- **Suggested Room Layout**
  It is really important to arrange the room so that it
  - Provides participants with enough space to work through the modules
  - Enables the facilitator to walk around and see how each participant is working
  - Is arranged in a style that allows for group discussions, such as either the banquet or chevron style. Do **not** use the U-shape because it is a difficult style for trainings.
  - Includes a flip chart with markers
  - Has an LCD projector, screen, and computer (optional for first day only)

Banquet Style	Chevron Style
	

- **Equipment, Tables, and Chairs**
  - 1 flip chart at the front
  - LCD projector and computer (for the first day of the training only)
  - 1 table at front for projector and other materials
  - 1 screen at front for the slides
  - Enough tables and chairs for participants
  - 1 table with chairs at front for facilitators
  - 1 - 2 tables with chairs at back for facilitators and observers
  - 1 table at the front (or back) for materials

  (**Note:** A podium is **NOT** needed)

- **Prepare the Training Room**
  - Check the room before the training day (if possible)
  - Ensure materials and supplies are all available
  - Make sure equipment is working
  - Arrive at least an hour early on the training day

- **Have a Back-up Plan**
  - Be prepared for any and all problems by having a back-up plan
  - Have extra supplies and materials and use multiple formats (handouts, slides, etc.)
  - Be flexible and make positive situations out of negative ones

2. Introduce the Section

- **Introduce the following:**
  - Module (if the section that is being covered is at the beginning of a module)
  - Page of the form
  - Section and items that will be covered (i.e., Module A, Items 1 – 6)

- **For each item, briefly mention**
  - If the item is new or revised
  - Purpose of the item
  - Areas that are important
  - Things that can be confusing

- **Mention what participants should do**
  - Read instructions for the section
  - Answer the exercises
  - Work at their own pace – but try to keep within the estimated time

- **State that if they have questions, they should raise their hands**

- **Mention that different people read at different speeds and it is okay if some people finish earlier than others**
  - If they finish before others they can take a break, but ask them to respect the fact that others are working and remain quiet. If they need to talk, they should leave the room.

3. Participants Work Through the Section

- **Keep participants on task**
  - Walk around the room periodically to check on how long it is taking everyone to finish the section. The agenda may indicate that it takes 15 minutes to work through the section but some groups may take more time and others may take less time.
  - Let participants work at their own pace, but try to keep them within the estimated time on the agenda
  - Check to see that participants are following the instructions
  - Answer questions that participants may have. If appropriate, mention the question and answer to the rest of the class

- **Keep participants on time**
  - Estimate how much time is needed
    - Observe who takes longer
    - Estimate how much time the person will need
  - Participants will work at different speeds
    During the training, different participants will work through the modules at different speeds. This is because of various factors such as
    - **Speed of reading**. Some people naturally read faster than others. It doesn't mean that they read more accurately, but just that they read faster.
    - **Amount of previous experience with the RVCT**. A participant who has a lot of experience with the RVCT will naturally grasp the content more quickly than someone who has very little experience with it.
    - **English as a second language**. If English is a second language for a participant, he or she may take longer to work through the modules.
  - Some participants will finish a section earlier than others
    - It is okay for them to take breaks or work on other things

        - Some may want to work ahead on other sections of the modules. It is up to you whether you want to allow them to do this. It does **NOT** mean they can leave the training earlier, because there are discussions at the end of each section.
        - If they talk with each other, you may need to remind them that people are still working and they should go outside the room to talk.
    - Some participants may take **a lot longer** than others to complete a section
        - Talk to the person in private and mention that it will be necessary to keep on time. He/she can catch up during breaks or lunch, and the material will also be covered during the discussions.

- **Announce to participants when**
    - 5 minutes are left
    - 1 minute is left
    - Time is up

4. Facilitate the Discussion

Group discussions are an important training activity in this course. As the facilitator, you will lead group discussions with the participants throughout the course to

- Review answers to the exercises to see if everyone answered correctly
- Determine if participants understand the content of the course
- Clarify confusing issues
- Enhance active participation
- Encourage participants to share ideas and experiences

During the discussion

- Restate ground rules and use of the parking lot (if necessary). (See Facilitator Guide page 28 for a description of the ground rules and parking lot.)
- Encourage all participants to contribute
- Manage the group discussions
- Engage the participants. More information is provided on engaging participants in Training Basics on Facilitator Guide page 22.

The facilitator should talk about 20% of the time and the participants should talk about 80%.

- **Keep discussions focused on the practical application of the RVCT instructions**

- **Know when to end discussions**
  This is important for managing the time during discussions. For example, state there is time for one more comment.

- **If you do not know the answer to a question**
    - Ask the participants what they think is the answer
    - Refer to the instructions in the manual
    - Admit you do not know, and tell participants that you will find out the answer and will provide the answer later. Add this item to the parking lot.

5, Summarize the Section

This step is very important because it helps to reinforce the main issues. Unfortunately, it is also the step that is the most frequently forgotten.

- Emphasize the important points in the section
- Review and clarify areas of confusion

How to Train Adults

Although a facilitator might be an expert in technical content and training, his/her functions extend beyond simply providing information. Adults learn differently than children and require different training approaches. Knowing how adults learn is critical to the success of your training. Important training concepts and adult learning principles provide suggestions that can enhance your training skills.

Four Important Training Concepts

#	Concept	Description
1.	**Facilitate learning**	• The role of the facilitator is to enhance, assist, and foster learning rather than being the only one who provides the content of the course
2.	**Training is more than education**	• Training is providing participants with skills, knowledge, and attitudes that they can apply immediately to their job • Education is providing students, patients, and colleagues with content information that they may or may not use at a later date
3.	**Telling is NOT training**	• Telling participants things and providing a PowerPoint presentation does not mean that they will actually learn the information and gain the skills. • Participants need to be engaged and participate in the learning to increase retention.
4.	**Teaching more content does NOT mean that more learning will occur**	• Too much information can overload participants with content. • It is better to concentrate on the important need-to-know information so that participants will actually learn it.

Learning styles

There are three basic learning styles that are indicated in the table below.

Three Basic Learning Styles

Visual	Auditory	Movement (or Kinesthetic)
Learn through • Watching • Observing • Reading	**Learn through** • Hearing	**Learn through** • Moving • Doing • Practicing • Touching

Most people use all three styles, but each person has a dominant or preferable style. The style of learning that people use also depends on the skills and knowledge that are being taught. The RVCT Training Course incorporates all three styles to appeal to participants' various ways of learning.

Use Adult Learning Principles

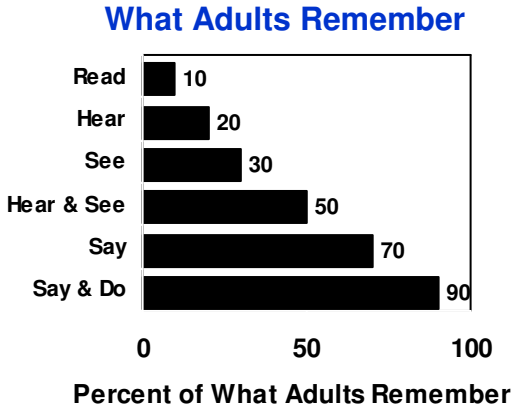
Training adults is different from training students or children. The following table provides principles of adult learning and describes some important training techniques you can use to engage the course participants.

Principles of Adult Learning

#	Principle	Training Technique
1.	Adults bring a wealth of knowledge and experience which they want to share	Encourage participants to share their knowledge and experiences. Include activities that utilize their knowledge and experience
2.	Adults are decision-makers and self-directed learners	Include problem-solving activities
3.	Adults have different learning styles that must be respected	Provide multiple ways for participants to learn the material
4.	Adults want to participate rather than just listen to a lecture	Create a participatory learning environment with various types of activities
5.	Adults are motivated by information or tasks that are meaningful and applicable to their jobs	Relate the content to problems participants encounter in their jobs
6.	Adults prefer training that focuses on real-life problems	Relate content to the types of problems they encounter in their jobs
7.	Adults expect their time during training to be used carefully	Follow a realistic time schedule
8.	Adults feel anxious when participating in a group that makes them look uninformed, either professionally or personally	Avoid criticism. Acknowledge all participants' contributions
9.	Adults learn best in a positive environment where they feel respected and confident	Create a positive environment by providing positive feedback and showing respect to all participants
10.	Adults come from different cultures, life-styles, religious preferences, genders, and ages	Respect all differences and encourage participants to respect each other's differences as well

What Adults Remember

The chart below illustrates what adults remember, depending on how they learn something.



The RVCT Training Course provides a variety of activities to help participants remember the content and gain the desired skills. The following learning methods are listed in the table below.

Learning Methods Used in the RVCT Training Course

Learning Method	Example
Reading	Reading the instructions on how to complete the RVCT
Hearing	Hearing facilitators and other course participants provide clarification, examples, and additional perspectives
Seeing	Seeing the instructions, tables, and diagrams in the manuals
Saying	Asking questions, making comments, discussing answers to the exercises, and sharing experiences
Doing	Completing the exercises that provide practice completing the RVCT

Use Repetition to Encourage Remembering

For people to actually learn something, they sometimes have to hear it 7 times.

So Repeat, Repeat, Repeat

- **In the Introduction:** Tell them what you are going to tell them
- **During the Discussions**: Tell them again
- **In the Summary**: Tell them what you just told them

Manage the Training

Create a safe and supportive environment

One of the most important things a facilitator can do is to create a safe and supportive environment for participants. There is a lot of discussion during the training and participants need to feel comfortable to

- Ask any questions – even simple questions
- State answers to the exercises – even if the answers might be wrong

Manage the training

You are the manager of the training, and it is up to you to keep the training on schedule and under control. There may be difficult situations, difficult participants, and unexpected circumstances to deal with. It is your responsibility to keep control and manage the problem, whatever it may be.

Manage time
Participants typically enjoy group discussions and want to share their ideas and experiences. As a result, it is easy for discussions to take too much time or get focused on topics that may **not** be critical to the training. It is important to know when to quit discussing a topic and move on to the next part of the training. Use the ground rules and parking lot to help manage the time. (See Facilitator Guide page 28 for a description of the ground rules and parking lot.)

Times allocated for each section in the agenda are guidelines. All of the curriculum content is important; however, the facilitator should adjust the times allocated according to the needs, knowledge, and experience of the group.

Manage group dynamics
Some of the items in the RVCT may prompt debate. To tackle key underlying issues and foster discussion, the facilitator should actively engage participants who express different viewpoints. Remain neutral about disagreements and refer to the materials for interpreting how the items on the RVCT should be completed. Check to see how everyone has answered to determine who is having problems understanding the content and what areas can be confusing.

Manage difficult participants
Throughout the training, continually assess the interpersonal dynamics of the group. Occasionally, the learning environment might be disrupted by individual participants. Some characteristics of a difficult participant include

- **Dominates the conversation**
- **Interrupts others**
- **Is a know-it-all**
- **Does not participate**

The following table includes suggestions for dealing with difficult participants.

Methods of Dealing with Difficult Participants

Method	Description
Maintain control	You are the manager of the training and need to stay in control. There may be a participant who challenges this, but it is up to you to control the situation in a professional manner.
Use body language	• Stand next to or behind participants who are having side-bar conversations or are being disruptive • Look at someone "a little too long" if they are being disruptive • Avoid looking at a participant who tries to dominate the conversation

Use verbal cues	• For a participant who is dominating the conversation, thank him/her for contributing and then ask participants
	  ○ "Are there any other opinions?"
	  ○ "Can we hear from some other participants?"
	• Encourage participants who are quiet by
	  ○ Asking for opinions from people who haven't been commenting and then looking at those specific people

Refer to the "ground rules" and the "parking lot"	It can be helpful to remind participants of the ground rules established at the beginning of the course. You can always add to the ground rules throughout the training. If someone is talking too much about a certain topic, use the parking lot (see Facilitator Guide page 28 for more information on ground rules and the parking lot).
Give the person a specific task	If the person is busy, he/she will be less likely to be disruptive. For example, have the person write comments on the flip chart or have them help keep time.
Change the dynamics of the group by changing seating arrangements	If a participant is disruptive change the seating arrangements • Strategically seat the difficult participant up front near you. • During breaks or lunch change the seating arrangement by moving the name tents. Make a general statement when participants return: "*In order to help you get acquainted with as many other participants as possible, the seating arrangements have been changed.*" This is effective for separating participants who are have side bar conversations.
Talk to the person outside the classroom	• Address such behaviors in private at your earliest convenience (during a break or lunch). Tactfully tell the participant how he/she is being disruptive. Refer to the ground rules, and reinforce the importance of adhering to those rules. • Never reprimand a difficult participant in front of the larger group! When training adults, it is important to show respect. If you do not, they may become resentful and try to challenge you throughout the remaining of the training.
Never loose your "cool" or be rude	Always treat participants in a professional manner.

Communicate Effectively

It is important to use good communication skills. Use the following communication skills when interacting with participants.

Effective Communication Skills

Skills	Suggestions for Communicating

Use your trainer's voice	• Your voice is your most important means of communicating with participants, so it should be friendly and supportive. It can be used to
	  ○ Set the tone of the training
	  ○ Encourage participation
	  ○ Provide positive reinforcement
	  ○ Help manage the training
	• Project your voice so everyone can hear you. What you have to say is important! So it is important that everyone hears you.
	• Vary the pitch to sound interesting and provide emphasis to those things that are important
	• Use a comfortable and varied pace to provide interest and emphasis

Use Your Eyes	• **Communicate with participants**
	  o Maintain eye contact
	  o Show enthusiasm
	  o Encourage participation
	  o Manage the training
	• **Observe participants to determine**
	  o If they are engaged
	  o If they understand
	  o What is their energy level
	  o What group dynamics are going on
	  o Who is not participating

Use Your Ears	The Greek philosopher Epictetus said, "Nature gave us two ears and one tongue so we can hear twice as much as we speak."
	
	• **Listen to participants.** This is a very important skill for a facilitator. It will to help create a participatory learning environment and help you determine
	  o If they understand the content
	  o What their concerns are
	  o What their needs are
	• **Listen and wait for participants to finish what they are saying before you speak**
	• **Use pauses to allow participants respond**
	• **Use silence to manage the training**

Use Appropriate Body Language	• **Use a friendly and supportive facial expression**
	  o Set the tone of the training (friendly and supportive) – If your expression is friendly and approachable, it will encourage participants to engage in the training
	  o Convey a friendly expression – Smiles are contagious. If you smile, participants tend to smile back.
	  o Provide positive reinforcement. Smiling and thanking participants when they respond, encourages participants to respond. Also, participants are more likely to respond again if they hear positive statements such as "that was a good question," or "excellent observation."
	  o Show enthusiasm – If you show enthusiasm for your training, it encourages the participants to be enthusiastic also
	• **Use your hands naturally**
	• **Move around the room.** Avoid standing behind a podium because it can create a barrier between you and the participants. Walking around can help you
	  o Encourage participation
	  o Ease nervousness
	  o Provide variety
	  o Manage the training
	• **Think about what you are doing and avoid behaviors that can be distracting such as**
	  o Crossing your arms
	  o Playing with jewelry or jiggling coins in your pockets
	  o Pointing at participants

Engage the Participants

Changing the activity every 20 – 30 minutes can engage participants. The RVCT Training Course alternates between participants working through short portions of the modules and then participating in discussions to provide variety.

- **Use various types of questions to**
  - Encourage all participants to contribute
  - Allow for differences of opinions
  - Keep participants alert
  - Help you determine participant's knowledge and understanding

Types of Questions

Question Type	Description	Examples	How to use
Close-ended	• Generates short final answers such as "yes" or "no" or just a few words • Does **not** encourage discussion because it limits what the participant says	• Is it …? • Do you need…? • Have you ever…?	Obtain a final answer, or conclusion, or for confirmation
Open-ended	• Generates descriptive answers that encourage discussion	• What are some ways…? • How can you…? • Why would you want to….?	Encourage participation and sharing of knowledge and experiences
Probing	• Generate additional discussion • Probe for more information	• Tell me more about…? • Please explain in detail…? • Would you elaborate….? • What is an example…?	Encourage participants to explain in greater detail about a subject

Other Methods for Engaging the Participants

Method	Description
Analogies	Compare two or more situations to help explain complex material. Analogies are helpful for teaching about a complex concept or process.
Stories	Provide real-life situations from your experience (or the experience of others you know) to explain situations or provide examples. Stories are compelling and bring the content to life.
Statistics	Provide statistics (especially from your jurisdiction) that can demonstrate the importance of collecting information or illustrate results of the data.
Energizers	Use short physical activities to increase the energy level of participants (especially after lunch or when participants are getting tired).

Encourage participation from all participants

- Include this in the ground rules, and then if necessary refer to this during the training
- Provide positive reinforcement that encourages participants to contribute. When participants provide comments, thank them and provide other types of positive reinforcement such as "good question" or "that is an important contribution."
- When reviewing the answers to the exercises, go around the room and let each participant answer a different question
- Use the "weather man" technique for a table or part of the room (wave your hands around an area and state that you would like to hear from this table or part of the room)
- Divide the room into sections and ask for someone from a specific section to respond
- Ask for participants who haven't yet contributed to respond
- Ask for the women to respond, then the men. Or use other techniques to alter who answers.

Follow-up and Transfer of Skills to the Job

The skills taught in the 2-day facilitated training course are designed to build capacity at the local level for accurately completing the RVCT. The RVCT is a complicated surveillance form, and follow-up is needed to observe and evaluate how well participants are able to transfer the skills learned in the course to their job. Successful implementation of TB surveillance requires collaborative efforts to maximize the use of existing human resources and develop strengthened human capacity. Although training is a key part of this strategy, managers and supervisors need to provide support to trainees when they apply the skills learned during this course and as they improve their performance.

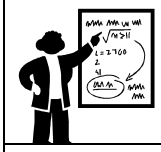
Suggestions for Facilitating Each Sections of the Course

This section includes suggestions for facilitating each specific section of the course. The suggestions include

- Estimated times for facilitating the module and section. Estimated times are based on the RVCT Self-Study Module field tests. Times may vary according to the group you are training or areas that you think should have more time.
- Materials needed
- Step-by-step suggestions for facilitating the section
- Items in the RVCT that are more complicated and will need more emphasis during the training

Icons Located in the Suggestions for Facilitating the Sections of the Course

The icons shown below are located in the Suggestions for Facilitating Specific Sections of the Course and are designed to give a visual cue for what should be done.

Icon	Description
	**Facilitator provides information to the participants** (i.e., the course overview, section introduction, or summary)
	**Participants work** (i.e., read the modules, work through exercises, take a test)
	**Facilitator leads a group discussion** (i.e., about the content, answers to the exercises, or test questions)
	**Facilitator provides handouts** (i.e., things to pass out to participants)
	**Facilitator writes on the flip chart** (i.e., ground rules)

Course Welcome and Introductions

Estimated Time	Activity	Materials Needed
15 - 25 min. (depends on the number of participants)	• Welcome participants • Introductions	• Flip chart and markers
15 - 25 min.	**TOTAL Estimated Time**	

Estimated Time	Suggestions for Facilitating
5 minutes	**Welcome participants to the training** • Briefly describe the importance of TB surveillance data and the importance of their role in the process

10 – 20 minutes (depends on the number of participants)
 	
Flip chart
 
	Introductions
	(Estimate 1 minute per person for the introduction)
	• **Ask** participants, facilitators, and observers to state their
	  ○ Name
	  ○ Job title
	  ○ Work place
	  ○ Type and amount of experience with the RVCT or TB surveillance data (i.e., 5 years completing the RVCT, 2 years analyzing RVCT data)
	• **Option**- write the type and amount of experience each person has on the flip chart. This can be posted on the wall during the training. The information gives a good overview of the skills and experience level of the participants.

15 – 25 minutes	**Total Estimated Time for the Course Welcome**

Course Overview

Estimated Time	Activity	Materials Needed
45 min.	Discuss topics in the slides and pass out materials	• RVCT Course Overview slides • Flip chart and markers Provide one per person of the following: • Handouts of RVCT Course Overview slides (optional) • RVCT form (optional) • Course agenda • RVCT Self-Study Modules Participant Manual • Answer sheets
45 min.	**TOTAL Estimated Time**	

Materials	Slide #	Suggestions for Facilitating
Handouts of slides 	**1.**	**Course Overview** • Provide handouts of the Course Overview slides • Introduce the RVCT Course • Mention the importance of the participants' role in accurately collecting TB surveillance data
	2.	**RVCT Revision Timeline** • Discuss points on slide

RVCT form 	**3.**	**RVCT Form**
		• Pass out copies of the RVCT form so participants can refer to it during the training
		• Discuss the form
		• Provide a brief overview of each page
		  ○ Mention the three different reports:
		  ▪ RVCT
		  ▪ Follow Up Report 1
		  ▪ Follow Up Report 2

	4.	**Tuberculosis Surveillance Data** • Discuss points on the slide
	5.	**How Do You Use RVCT Data** • Describe how the RVCT data are used
	6.	**Slide is animated** **Benefits of the RVCT Data** • Discuss points on the slide
	7.	**(Slide is animated)** **Consequences of Inaccurate, Incomplete, or Unknown RVCT Data** • Discuss points on the slide
	8.	**(Slide is animated)** **RVCT Data Collection** • Discuss points on the slide
	9.	**(Slide is animated)** **Importance of Training Staff on How to Use the RVCT** • Discuss points on the slide

	10.	**What Is the Status of the Software** • Discuss points on the slide
	11.	**Transition Overview Map** • Discuss points on the slide
	12.	**RVCT Training Program** • Discuss points on the slide
	13.	**Types of RVCT Training** • Discuss points on the slide
	14.	**RVCT Training Course Objectives** • Ask for a volunteer to read the objectives
Agenda 	**15.**	**Agenda for 2-Day Course** • Pass out agenda • Ask participants to follow along as you review the course agenda • Describe what will happen each day
Modules and Answer Sheets 	**16.**	**Course Materials** • Pass out modules and answer sheets • Explain how to use the answer sheet o Participants can record their answers in the modules and on the answer sheet o They should also record their initial answer in the "Your Answer" column, and can then record the actual answer when they check their answers in the back of the modules (Appendix G - Answer Key to the Exercises)
	17. – 19.	**RVCT Self-Study Modules** • Discuss points on the slides • Describe how the modules are organized
	20. – 21.	**Continuing Education** • Discuss points on the slides
Flip chart 	**22.**	**Ground Rules** (see description of ground rules on Facilitator Guide page 28) • Discuss points on the slides • Create a flip chart page labelled "Ground Rules" • Ask participants which ground rules they would like to include • Add any ground rules that participants do not mention • Review at the end • Post "Ground Rules" pages on the wall • Mention that ground rules can be added throughout the training
Flip chart 	**23.**	**Parking Lot** (see Description of the parking lot on Facilitator Guide page 28) • Explain the parking lot • Create a "Parking Lot" page on a flip chart sheet and post it on the wall
	24.	**Housekeeping** • Discuss various housekeeping issues

Description of Ground Rules

At the beginning of the training, it is very helpful to discuss "Ground Rules." These are expectations of both the participants and the trainers on basic rules of during the training. These will help the class go smoothly and meet the course objectives.

- **Ask** the participants to share their ideas for ground rules for the training
- **Write** suggestions on a flip chart
- **Review** the items on the flip chart
- **Use the list below as a guide. Include any of the items below if participants do not mention them**:
    - **Arrive on time** for the beginning of each session and after each break
    - **Keep each session on time**
    - **Switch off mobile phones** while in the training room
    - **Treat each other as equals** in the training room. Any past hierarchies and politics are to be left at the door.
    - **Show respect to everyone regardless of age, gender, religion, or culture**
    - **Share experience and expertise.** Many participants have previous experience and background in training.
    - **All questions are good questions. Feel free to ask questions at any time.**
    - **Only one person should speak at a time**
    - **Everyone should participate and contribute.** To ensure that the quieter voices are heard, we will not allow 1 or 2 people to dominate the conversation. Everyone has something important to contribute and it is important that we have the opportunity to hear from everyone.
    - **No side-bar conversations.** Comments should be made to the whole group.
    - Provide **feedback, as long as it is constructive, not critical.**
    - **Be flexible with differences in culture and language**.
    - **Accept mispronunciation of names**
    - **Wear name tags**
- **Mention that ground rules are used throughout the training and new rules can be added.** Facilitators and participants can refer to the ground rules during the training to remind each other about what was agreed to. Also, new rules can be added during the training

Description of the Parking Lot

The "Parking Lot" is a place where topics can be "parked" for later discussion. It can include questions, concerns, or topics that we don't have time for during the presentations. Facilitators write the question, concern, or topic on the Parking Lot so that it can be discussed at a later time during breaks, at lunch, or at the end of the day. This is a great way to manage discussions that are taking too long, or those that are getting off topic. It is an especially important tool to use during group discussions.

Introduction (section of the RVCT Modules)

Estimated Time (min.)	Activity	Materials Needed
2 min.	**Introduce the section**	Introduction section of the modules
10 min.	**Participants work**	
3 min.	**Discuss the Introduction section**	
15 minutes	**TOTAL Time**	

Estimated Time	Suggestions for Facilitating

2 minutes 	**Introduce the section**
	• **State that participants should take about 10 minutes to briefly review the Introduction section of the modules**
	• **Explain** that this section provides an overview of the
	  ○ RVCT form
	  ○ Instructions for completing the form
	  ○ Modules
	• **Emphasize** that they should read carefully the following:
	  ○ **Overview of the RVCT Form**
	  ○ **What Is New in the RVCT**
	  ○ **Overview of the RVCT Instructions**
	  ○ **Overview of the RVCT Self-Study Modules**
	• **State** that they should raise their hand if they have questions
	• **Mention that different people read at different speeds and it is okay if some people finish earlier than others**
	  ○ If they finish before others they can take a break, but they should respect the fact that others are working and remain quiet. If they need to talk they should leave the room.

10 minutes 	**Participants read through the Introduction**
	• **Walk** around the room several times to
	  ○ See how they are doing
	  ○ Determine how much more time is needed for everyone to finish
	• **Answer** questions quietly, but if appropriate, mention it to the other participants
	• **Announce to participants when**
	  ○ 5 minutes are left
	  ○ 1 minute is left
	  ○ Time is up

3 minutes 	**Discuss the Introduction section**
	• **Ask** if there are any questions
	• **Review** briefly the
	  ○ **Unknown dates (99 issue)**
	  ○ **Pending vs. Unknown Information**
	  ○ **Updating of Forms**
	  ○ **Data Entry and Security**
	  ○ **Patient Confidentiality**

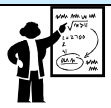
15 minutes	**Total Time**

.

Suggested Training Format for Facilitating a Section of a Module

It is very helpful to cover only a short section (3-7 items) of the modules at a time. This builds interactivity into the training. Also, it permits frequent discussions to review the content and to obtain answers to questions. The following format is suggested for facilitating a section of a module.

Estimated Time	Suggestions for Facilitating	

2-10 min. depending on section		**Introduce the Module and Section**
		• **Introduce the Module** (if the section that is being covered is at the beginning of a module)
		  ○ Show which page of the form the module will cover
		  ○ Give a brief overview of what is covered on that page of the RVCT
		• **Introduce the Section**
		  ○ Indicate items that will be covered (i.e., Module A, Items 1 – 6)
		• **For each item, briefly mention**
		  ○ If the item is new or revised
		  ○ Purpose of the item
		  ○ Areas that are important and things that can be confusing
		• **Mention what participants should do**
		  ○ Read instructions for the section
		  ○ Answer the exercises
		  ○ Work at their own pace – but try to keep within the estimated time

Varies depending on section		**Participants work through the section**
		• **Participants read the instructions and complete the exercises for all of the items in the section (e.g., 1 – 6)**
		• **Walk** around the room several times to
		  ○ See how they are doing
		  ○ Determine how much more time is needed for everyone to finish
		• **Answer questions** quietly. If appropriate, mention to the others
		• **Announce to participants when**
		  ○ 5 minutes are left
		  ○ 1 minute is left
		  ○ Time is up

Varies depending on section		**Facilitate the discussion of this section** • **Review each item** • **Review the answers to each exercise** • **Answer** any questions
2 min.		**Summarize the section** • **Ask** if there are any questions • **Review** briefly the important items and complex areas
Varies	**TOTAL Time**	

The suggestions for facilitating each module below include

- How to divide the module into sections for training.
- Estimated times for the module and sections. Times may vary according to the group you are training or areas that you think should have more time.
- Which items are new, revised, or unchanged (highlighted items indicate the more complicated items).
- Suggestions for each item on points to emphasize and questions to ask.

Module A – RVCT (page 1) Items 1 – 16

Highlighted items = more complicated

Estimated Time	Module A – RVCT (page 1)	* Status of Item		
		New	Revised	No Change
1 hr. and 40 min. • 5 min. introduction • 45 min. participants work • 48 min. discussion • 2 min. summary	**1 – Date Reported**		**R**	
	2 – Date Submitted		**R**	
	3 – Case Number		**R**	
	4 – Reporting Address for Case Counting			**NC**
	5 – Count Status	**N**		
	6 – Date Counted		**R**	
1 hr. and 5 min. • 5 min. introduction • 20 min. participants work • 38 min. discussion • 2 min. summary	**7 – Previous Diagnosis of TB Disease**			**NC**
	8 – Date of Birth			**NC**
	9 – Sex at Birth			**NC**
	10 – Ethnicity			**NC**
	11 – Race			**NC**
	12 – Country of Birth		**R**	
	13 – Month-Year Arrived in U.S.			**NC**
50 min. • 5 min. introduction • 20 min. participants work • 23 min. discussion • 2 min. summary	**14 – Pediatric TB Patients (<15 years old)**	**N**		
	15 – Status at TB Diagnosis		**R**	
	16 – Site of TB Disease		**R**	
3 hrs. and 35 min.	**Total Time for Module A**			

Facilitating Items 1– 6

Introduce Module A

- State that this is the first page of the RVCT Report
- Mention that this page highlights the count status, patient demographics, site of disease, whether the case is pediatric, and status at time of diagnosis

1 – Date Reported

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Emphasize differences in the dates for items 1, 2, and 6
- Explain use of "99" (if necessary) for missing day or month. Indicate that it is critical that the year has to be included for this item. Discuss the coding of missing dates and how to document this in your software.
- Refer to the **Pending vs. Unknown Information** in the introductory section and emphasize that "unknown" or missing information should be rare

2 – Date Submitted

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Emphasize differences in the dates for items 1, 2, and 6

3 – Case Number

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- State the **State Case Number** is the official identification number for the case and it is locally assigned
- Emphasize **Year Reported** should be used in the case number and **Not Year Counted**
- Emphasize all countable and noncountable TB cases should receive a unique **Case Number**
- Highlight the reason codes for linking cases
- Spend extra time and get clarity on **Reason 1**
- Emphasize the difference between **recurrence** and **previous TB**
- Review the table, **Process for Reporting a Recurrence of TB**.

4 – Reporting Address for Case Counting

- Read the **primary purpose**
- Emphasize that patients from "specific populations" supersede patients from "specific locations" (see Guidelines to Determine Reporting Address in Module A, page 35)
    - **Migrant Workers and Immigrants**
        - Review examples of migrant workers (examples at the end of Item 4) and immigrants (see note in Item 35, **Immigration Status at First Entry to the U.S.**)
    - **Homeless**
        - Review definition of homeless persons in Item 27, **Homeless Within Past Year**
    - **Resident of Long-Term Care Facility**
        - Review definition of what is a long-term care resident in Item 29, **Long-Term Care Facility**
    - **Correctional Facility**
      Example
        - Patient is in jail in one county when TB diagnostic evaluation was performed or initiated
        - Goes to another county for treatment
        - Reporting address should be the place where diagnosed
- Emphasize the reporting address should be the location where the TB diagnostic evaluation was performed or initiated
- Briefly review **Reporting Address**
  Example:
    - Lives in Fulton County
    - Diagnosed in DeKalb County (neighboring county)
    - Receives entire treatment in DeKalb without returning home, as the patient is living with his sister in DeKalb County
    - Reporting address should be in DeKalb County
    - DeKalb County counts the case

  Example:
    - Lives in Fulton County
    - Diagnosed in DeKalb County (neighboring county)
    - Returns to Fulton County for treatment
    - Reporting address should be in Fulton County
    - Fulton County counts the case

  Example:
    - Moved
    - Emphasize foreign visitor
        - See **Other People Entering the United States**
        - See **Appendix B** (section d)

5 – Count Status

- State that this item is **new**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Call attention to the table **Countable TB Case**, note boxes, and refer to **Appendix A** for the TB case definition
- Emphasize one of the main features of the new RVCT form which is the ability to document and report verified TB cases that are countable and noncountable. Provide a detailed review of the noncountable categories.
    - Mention that if persons are noncountable because TB treatment was initiated in one of the U.S. Territories, this should be documented in **Counted by Another Area,** as these territories are considered out-of-state (also, see item 42, **Moved**)
    - TB treatment initiated in another country
        - Emphasize the information in the table in item 4, **Other People Entering the United States** and **Appendix B (section d)**
    - Note the chart **Counting Recurrent TB Cases:** to explain discrete episodes of TB, also refer back to table in item 3, **Case Report**, **Process for Reporting a Recurrence of TB**

6 – Date Counted

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Emphasize differences in the dates for items 1, 2, and 6
- Note the example **Date Counted:** although a case may be reported in December, it should not be counted until bacteriologic or clinical evidence of TB is available (which sometimes may not happen until January). In this example, you would have a case counted in January with the report year of the prior month in December. Also, see the example Year Reported for Item 3, **Case Number**.

Items 7 – 13

7 – Previous Diagnosis of TB Disease

- Read the **primary purpose**
- Call attention to the comment for **YES** responses
- Emphasize that if the patient had previous TB, the most recent previous RVCT **State Case Number** should be entered under **Linking State Case Number** (item 3) and enter reason code 1
- For clarity, see the previous TB table, **Process for Reporting a Recurrence of TB,** in item 3. The information in the right column highlights discrete (separate and distinct) episodes of TB disease.
- Emphasize that documentation of **Previous TB** is very important. Written documentation is preferred; however, if that is not available, oral documentation will be accepted.

8 – Date of Birth

- Read the **primary purpose**
- If the health care worker does **not** know the data, then the data should **not** be misrepresented.
- Note cultural information in the comment box. Some societies or cultures throughout the world do not document the day, month, or even the year of birth. In these cases, "99" (or unknown) is acceptable; however, every effort should be made to accurately capture all information.
- Refer to the **Pending vs. Unknown Information** in the introductory section, and emphasize that "unknown" or missing information should be rare.

9 – Sex at Birth

- Read the **primary purpose**
- Emphasize the need to ask probing questions. Typically, the information is easily ascertained.
- Knowing sex at birth is important for surveillance purposes. If a person had a sex change, then it will misrepresent the data unless the information captured is **Sex at Birth**.
- Mention that hermaphrodite information is usually in the medical records.

10 – Ethnicity

- Read the **primary purpose**
- If you do **Not** know the data, do **Not** misrepresent it. The response to this item should be based on the patient's **self-identity** or **self-report**.
- Note the example **Not Hispanic or Latino but has a Hispanic name.** Be careful not to misrepresent the ethnicity by surnames.

11 – Race

- Read the **primary purpose**
- If you do **Not** know the data, do **Not** misrepresent it. The response to this item should be based on the patient's **self-identity** or **self-report**.
- Call attention to the list of different countries listed for Asian and Native Hawaiian and Other Pacific Islander
  Example: If a person is from Russia, what race do you list, since Russia spans Europe and Asia? You could put "Unknown" and **Country of Birth** is Russia. But it is better to probe for more information, because "Unknown" is **Not** a desired option. Probing may include asking the person about family history, or country of birth or of ancestry; however, even with probing, remember that the response for **Race** is the person's self-identity.

12 – Country of Birth

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Emphasize that "U.S.-born" is **Not** the same as U.S. citizen (repeat multiple times). Some people who are U.S. citizens may not be "U.S.-born." The table, **Examples of "U.S.-Born,"** helps to clarify by providing different scenarios.

13 – Month-Year Arrived in U.S.

- Read the **primary purpose**
- Emphasize that the desired response is to capture the date of the first time the patient enters the United States
- Note the examples and create new examples unique to your jurisdiction
  Example: If the person leaves after his/her the first arrival in the U.S. and travels to a country with a higher TB prevalence, we still want to capture the first arrival only.

Items 14 – 16

14 – Pediatric TB Patients (<15 years old)

- State that this item is **new**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Mention the issue about guardians
  Example: A mother of a pediatric TB patient is living with a man from Haiti, and is divorced from the child's father, who is a U. S. citizen. Focus on the person who has the risk factors rather than the legal guardian; however, the laws and rules for guardianship within your jurisdictions should be honored.

15 – Status at TB Diagnosis

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Briefly review **status at TB diagnosis**
  Example: If a person has TB and is killed instantly in an accident, TB would **Not** be an underlying cause of death: however, if that same person does **Not** die instantly and goes into a coma for several months and then dies, TB could be an underlying cause of death (as the TB could have inhibited complete recovery).
- Emphasize to select **Yes** for **If DEAD, was TB a cause of death,** if TB was **a** cause of death but may **Not** be **the** main cause of death.

16 – Site of TB Disease

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **Primary Purpose**
- Note the comment on miliary TB. Miliary has been removed from **Site of Disease**.
- Emphasize that if "Other" is selected, the anatomic codes are listed in **Appendix C**. Anatomic codes are used for the RVCT Self-Study Modules. However, when entering data into the software there will probably be a computer function (e.g., drop down menu) that does not require entering codes.

Module B – RVCT (page 2) Items 17 – 25

Estimated time per section	Module B – RVCT (page 2)	* Status of Item		
		New	Revised	No Change
35 min. • 5 min. introduction • 15 min. participants work • 13 min. discussion • 2 min. summary	**17 – Sputum Smear**		**R**	
	18 – Sputum Culture		**R**	
	19 – Smear/Pathology/Cytology of Tissue and Other Body Fluids		**R**	
	20 – Culture of Tissue and Other Body Fluids		**R**	
25 min. • 2 min. introduction • 8 min. participants work • 13 min. discussion • 2 min. summary	**21 – Nucleic Acid Amplification Test Result**	**N**		
	22A – Initial Chest Radiograph and Other Chest Imaging Study		**R**	
	22B – Initial Chest CT Scan or Other Chest Imaging Study	**N**		
40 min. • 2 min. introduction • 13 min. participants work • 23 min. discussion • 2 min. summary	**23 – Tuberculin (Mantoux) Skin Test at Diagnosis**		**R**	
	24 – Interferon Gamma Release Assay for *MycobacteriumTuberculosis* at Diagnosis	**N**		
	25 – Primary Reason Evaluated for TB Disease	**N**		
1 hr. and 40 min.	**Total Time for Module B**			

Items 17 – 20

Introduce Module B

- Mention that this is the second page of the RVCT report
- Note this page highlights the laboratory results and primary reason for being evaluated
- Explain that information in the descriptions for **items 17-20 look similar, but are NOT the same**

17 – Sputum Smear

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **primary purpose**

18 – Sputum Culture

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **primary purpose**

19 – Smear/Pathology/Cytology of Tissue and Other Body Fluids

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Emphasize that this is smear **or** pathology **or** cytology of tissue and other body fluids

20 – Culture Tissue and Other Body Fluids

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **primary purpose**

Items 21 – 22B

21 – Nucleic Acid Amplification Test Result

- State that this item is **new**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Acknowledge that different states do this different ways
- State that "Updated Guidelines for the Use of Nucleic Acid Amplification Tests in the Diagnosis of Tuberculosis" are available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/mm5801a3.htm
- Reiterate that the above guidelines are simply guidelines, **Not** requirements. They should be implemented when feasible, based on available resources.

22A – Initial Chest Radiograph

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Direct attention to the comment that miliary TB is no longer listed as a **Site of Disease**.
- Clarify that "Normal" includes "any other abnormalities that are **NOT** consistent with TB."
- Acknowledge that these two points are changed from the old RVCT.

22B – Initial Chest CT Scan or Other Chest Imaging Study

- State that this item is **new**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Explain that instructions for this item are identical to item 22A, **Initial Chest Radiograph**

Items 23 – 25

23 – Tuberculin (Mantoux) Skin Test at Diagnosis

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Emphasize that as much information as possible should be collected regarding TST. Use of "99" for unknown month or day is acceptable, but exact dates are preferable.
- **Year of TST is required**. Entering "9999" is **NOT** acceptable.
- If millimeters of indurations are **not** known, "99" may be entered; however, every effort possible should be made to determine mm of indurations.

24 – Interferon Gamma Release Assay for *Mycobacterium Tuberculosis* at Diagnosis

- State that this item is **new**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Emphasize the comments for date collected: Especially if the results of one or more tests were positive for *M. tuberculosis* complex, enter the date the first blood test with a positive result was collected.

25 – Primary Reason Evaluated for TB Disease

- State that this item is **new**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Emphasize that only ONE reason should be selected. If more than one seems to apply, select is the best choice. Read the table and comments for complete explanations for each possible choice.
- Mention that **health care worker** supersedes **targeted testing and employment/administrative testing**. Also, **TB symptoms and contact investigation** supersedes **health care worker**.

Module C – RVCT (page 3) Items 26 – 37

Estimated time per section	Module C – RVCT (page 3)	* Status of Item		
		New	Revised	No Change
40 min. • 2 min. introduction • 18 min. participants work • 18 min. discussion • 2 min. summary	**26 – HIV Status at Time of Diagnosis**		**R**	
	27 – Homeless Within Past Year			**NC**
	28 – Resident of Correctional Facility at Time of Diagnosis		**R**	
	29 – Resident of Long-Term Care Facility at Time of Diagnosis			**NC**
35 min. • 2 min. introduction • 18 min. participants work • 13 min. discussion • 2 min. summary	**30 – Primary Occupation Within Past Year**		**R**	
	31 – Injecting Drug Use Within Past Year			**NC**
	32 – Non-Injecting Drug Use Within Past Year			**NC**
	33 – Excess Alcohol Use Within Past Year			**NC**
	34 – Additional TB Risk Factors	**N**		
35 min. • 2 min. introduction • 13 min. participants work • 18 min. discussion • 2 min. summary	**35 – Immigration Status at First Entry to the U.S.**	**N**		
	36 – Date Therapy Started			**NC**
	37 – Initial Drug Regimen		**R**	
1 hr. and 50 min.	**Total Time for Module C**			

Items 26 – 29

Introduce Module C

- Mention that this is the third and last page of the RVCT report
- Explain that this page highlights the patient risk factors associated with TB, date therapy started, and initial drug regimen

26 – HIV Status at Time of Diagnosis

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Emphasize that **all** TB patients should have a known HIV status
- State that undocumented HIV status (i.e., patient history with no documentation) is **NOT** acceptable. Review all information in the medical record to ascertain the HIV status. Check the doctor's notes.
- Mention that this item can be updated during course of treatment

27 – Homeless Within Past Year

- Read the **primary purpose**
- Direct attention to the "Definitions for Homeless" on Module C page 131. Note that this information is consistent with the National Coalition for the Homeless definition.

28 – Resident of Correctional Facility at Time of Diagnosis

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Review important comments for (1) **Correctional Facility at Time of Diagnosis**, (2) **Local Jail**, and (3) **Juvenile Correctional Facility.**
- Mention that this question is trying to determine risk in the facility. Custody of **Immigration and Customs Enforcement** (ICE) is of secondary interest. Note ICE inmates may be housed in local jails.

29 – Resident of Long-Term Care Facility at Time of Diagnosis

- Read the **primary purpose**
- Direct attention to table containing all descriptions and comments for facility types.
- Briefly review examples for **Residential Facility** and **Mental Health Residential Facility.**

Items 30 – 34

30 – Primary Occupation Within Past Year

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the p**rimary purpose**
- Emphasize that **health care worker** supersedes **correctional facility or other occupation.**
- Mention the new categories **(retired, not seeking employment student, homemaker, disabled person)**.
- State that **Unemployed** has a new time frame. It is **within 12 months** and **NOT** within 24 months as it was on the old RVCT.
- Mention the comment for **Unemployed.** This option should **not** be selected for very brief periods of unemployment.
- State **Retired** has a time frame, within the past 12 months.
- Note **Correctional Facility Employee** may be employed by any correctional facility (Federal, Local, or Juvenile). Also, these patients may be paid or unpaid (e.g., Volunteer).
- Call attention to the examples of **Injection Drug Use**.

31 – Injecting Drug Use Within Past Year

- Read the **primary purpose**
- Highlight the information in both comments for this section. Medical documentation or other enrollment in a drug treatment program may provide supporting evidence of injection drug use.
- Emphasize that accurate information on drug use may not be captured in one visit, but may be gathered through building a relationship with the patient through the course of treatment for TB.
- Mention that injection drug use involves the use of hypodermic needles and syringes.

32 – Non-Injecting Drug Use Within Past Year

- Read the **primary purpose**
- Highlight the information in both comments for this section. Medical documentation or other enrollment in a drug treatment program may provide supporting evidence of **Non-Injecting Drug Use**.
- Emphasize that accurate information on drug use may not be captured in one visit, but may be gathered through building a relationship with the patient through the course of treatment for TB.
- Note that non-injection drug use involves the use of licensed or prescription drugs, or illegal drugs that were not injected.
- Call attention to the examples of **Non-Injecting Drug Use**

33 – Excess Alcohol Use Within Past Year

- Read the **primary purpose**
- Highlight the information in both comments for this section. Medical documentation or other enrollment in a drug treatment program may provide supporting evidence of excessive alcohol use. This information may also be documented through participation in self-help programs or alcohol treatment programs, or arrest for intoxication or drunk or disorderly behavior.
- Emphasize that accurate information on alcohol use may not be captured in one visit, but may be gathered through building a relationship with the patient through the course of treatment for TB
- Mention that for the purposes of these data, CDC does **Not** provide a standard for excessive alcohol use. However, numerous screening instruments such as CAGE, AUDIT, and MAST may be useful to help identify those who may use alcohol to excess.

34 – Additional TB Risk Factors

- State that this item is **new**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- State that only **Contact of MDR TB patient, Contact of infectious TB patient,** and **Missed contact** are time sensitive (2 years or less).
- Emphasize the difference in **Contact of MDR TB** and **Infections Patients,** as noted in the comments for each, respectively.
- Mention that if the TB patient has diabetes mellitus, end-stage renal disease, or HIV/AIDS, do **not** select immunosuppressive condition unless the patient has another immunosuppressive condition.
- Emphasize the "Comments: Other" that indicates do **Not** include risk factors identified in items 27-33. For example, do **Not** include **Homeless within Past Year** (item 27).

Items 35 – 37

35 – Immigration Status at First Entry to the U.S.

- State that this item is **new**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Mention that this is a potentially sensitive issue for some people, and that our goal is to provide quality health care for all and not discourage anyone seeking treatment.
- You may want to state your jurisdiction's position on collecting these data and how the information will be used.
- State that surveillance data are used to observe the association between immigration status and TB.
- Review the 2 main types of legal immigration status in the Note box.
- Describe the different types of visas.
- Explain the difference between "Asylee, Parolee, and Refugee" (see the comment boxes).

36 – Date Therapy Started

- Read the **primary purpose**
- State **Date Therapy Started** is the month, day, and year the patient began multidrug therapy for TB disease or suspected TB disease.
- Describe the Hierarchy of Date Therapy Started that is illustrated in the diagram.

37 – Initial Drug Regimen

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Mention that this item now includes additional drugs.
- Highlight the combination drugs mentioned in the comments and examples.

Module D – Initial Drug Susceptibility Report, (Follow Up Report–1) Items 38 – 40

Estimated Time	Module D – Initial Drug Susceptibility Report, (Follow Up Report–1)	* Status of Item		
		New	Revised	No Change
40 min. • 2 min. introduction • 18 min. participants work • 20 min. discussion • 2 min. summary	**38 – Genotyping Accession Number**	**N**		
	39 – Initial Drug Susceptibility Testing		**R**	
	40 – Initial Drug Susceptibility Results		**R**	
40 min.	**Total Time for Module D**			

Items 38 – 40

Introduce Module D

- Note that this page highlights genotyping information, as well as initial drug susceptibility testing and results
- Ask who this report is completed for. (Answer: Complete this report for all culture-positive cases, which means that the person has TB.)

38 – Genotyping Accession Number

- State that this item is **new**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Emphasize that this number is assigned by the genotyping reference laboratory.
- Ask participants to raise their hands if they have some experience with genotyping, such as using the National TB Genotyping Service that CDC established in 2004, and have them describe their experience.
- Ask whether they have some experience with the California lab, Michigan lab, or CDC lab.
- Write on the flip chart the three types of labs, and explain how the genotyping accession numbers differ from each other.

39 – Initial Drug Susceptibility Testing

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Ask how they define “isolate” and “specimen,” and mention that these and other items are described in the glossary in the back of the manual.
- Review the drug susceptibility testing comment for multiple specimens.
- Explain that the specimen date is the date for which the **first** specimen for which drug susceptibility testing was done.

40 – Initial Drug Susceptibility Results

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Emphasize the list of the first-line drugs and the second-line drugs.
- Mention the interval between specimen collections, which should be less than 4 weeks.
- Mention the note on “Other Quinolones”.

Module E – Case Completion Report (Follow Up Report–2) Items 41 – 49

Estimated Time	Module E – Case Completion Report (Follow Up Report–2)	* Status of Item		
		New	Revised	No Change
30 min. • 2 min. introduction • 13 min. participants work • 13 min. discussion • 2 min. summary	**41 – Sputum Culture Conversion Documented**		**R**	
	42 – Moved	**N**		
35 min. • 2 min. introduction • 18 min. participants work • 13 min. discussion • 2 min. summary	**43 – Date Therapy Stopped**			**NC**
	44 – Reason Therapy Stopped or Never Started		**R**	
	45 – Reason Therapy Extended > 12 Months	**N**		
	46 – Type of Outpatient Health Care Provider		**R**	
50 min. • 2 min. introduction • 18 min. participants work • 28 min. discussion • 2 min. summary	**47 – Directly Observed Therapy (DOT)**		**R**	
	48 – Final Drug Susceptibility Testing		**R**	
	49 – Final Drug Susceptibility Results		**R**	
1 hr. and 55 min.	**Total time for Module E**			

Items 41 – 42

Introduce Module E

- Note this is the last report of the RVCT and covers two pages
- State that this report highlights data about treatment outcomes, provider status, and if the patient moved during treatment.
- Ask who this report is completed for. (Answer: Complete this report for all patients who were alive at alive at diagnosis.)

41 – Sputum Culture Conversion Documented

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- State that this section should be completed for patients with initial positive sputum cultures.
- Emphasize the information about positive sputum cultures in the note box.
- Call attention to the comment section of the **date Specimen collected for FIRST consistently negative sputum culture.** Note that this item should be completed only for patients who had 1 or more positive sputum cultures, and who subsequently had at least 1 documented negative culture. The date should be at least 1 week after the last positive culture result.
- Call attention to the available options for **Not** documenting sputum culture conversion.
- Explain that if the answer for **Sputum Culture Conversion Documented** is **No,** please select one of the available reasons, **No follow-up sputum despite induction, No follow-up sputum and no induction, Died, etc.**

42 – Moved

- State that this item is **new**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Note the definition of **Moved**
- Mention that **Out of the U.S.** includes **all countries other** than **U.S. Territory, U.S. Island Area, or U. S. Outlying Area.** Countries in these areas are considered out of state, as they are reporting jurisdictions. Mention the examples, to help provide clarity.

Items 43 – 46

43 – Date Therapy Stopped

- Read the **primary purpose**
- Emphasize the hierarchy for determining date therapy stopped.
- Ask for other scenarios, or share own experience.
- Emphasize the comments: **Update the date that therapy was stopped** and **Reopen case.**

44 – Reason Therapy Stopped or Never Started

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Mention to complete this item when the patient completes therapy or the case is closed.
- Review all options and descriptions, especially **Adverse Treatment Event** and **Died.**
- Give examples and probe participants with questions, especially if the patient died, and how they would fill out the cause of death.
- Emphasize the comments: **Reopen a case**.

45 – Reason Therapy Extended > 12 Months

- State that this item is **new**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- You may want to be creative in filling out the matching questions, such as asking participants to play the role of the patients mentioned in the case scenario and matching the patient with the reason therapy extended.

46 – Type of Outpatient Health Care Provider

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Emphasize the definition for type of outpatient health care provider.
- If time permits, you may use role play or other creative ways to do the matching questions.

Items 47 – 49

47 – Directly Observed Therapy (DOT)

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Ask how DOT is defined
- Ask, “Is videotaped ingestion currently considered a visual confirmation?”
- Share your experience, or ask others to share their experience, with DOT.
- Ask a volunteer to illustrate how they calculated 26 weeks in the scenario; use a flip chart if necessary.

48 – Final Drug Susceptibility Testing

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Ask, "Why is this variable necessary?" (Answer: to help assess the frequency of acquired drug resistance.)
- Emphasize the date,which should be 30 or more days after the collection date of the initial isolate.
- Mention anatomic code

49 – Final Drug Susceptibility Results

- State that this item is **revised**
- Read the **primary purpose**
- Emphasize that "**any degree of resistance**" is recorded as **Resistant.**
- Mention "Other Quinolones" and that you cannot leave any of the items blank unless results are pending. Refer to the **Pending vs. Unknown Information** in the introductory section and emphasize that "unknown" or missing information should be rare.

RVCT Self-Study Posttest and End-of-Course Evaluation

Estimated Time (min.)	Activity	Materials Needed
3 min.	**Introduce the posttest**	• RVCT Self-Study Posttest (1 per participant) • Answer Sheet (part of the packet of answer sheets used with the modules) (1 per participant) • RVCT Self-Study Posttest Answer Key (for facilitators) • End-of-Course Evaluation (1 per participant)
28 min.	**Participants work through test**	
7 min.	**End-of-Course Evaluation**	
2 min.	**Collect Evaluation**	
40 minutes	**Total Time for Posttest and Course Evaluation**	

Estimated Time	Suggestions for Facilitating

3 minutes
 
 
Hand out the Posttest and End-of-Course Evaluation
	Introduce the RVCT Self-Study Posttest and End-of-Course Evaluation
	• Explain the posttest and what they should do
	  ○ It is a 30-item test that includes multiple choice and matching questions
	  ○ It is **not** a timed test, so everyone will be able to finish
	  ○ If they finish before others, they should be quiet and remember that others are still working
	• Explain using the Posttest Answer Sheet
	  ○ Record their answers on the Posttest and on the Answer Sheet (part of the packet of Answer Sheets used with the modules)
	  ○ They will return the Answer Sheet but can keep the test
	• Hand out the Posttest and the End-of-Course Evaluation
	• Ask participants to write their name on the test
	• State that there is only one correct answer for each test question
	• State that
	  ○ No one will see their answers except you (and other facilitators)
	  ○ This test is used as a learning activity only
	  ○ The answers to the tests will be reviewed after everyone has finished
	• Ask if there are any questions
	• Mention that they should complete the End-of-Course Evaluation when they finish the test

35 minutes
 
	Participants work through the test
	• Walk around the room several times to
	  ○ See how they are doing
	  ○ Determine how much more time is needed for everyone to finish
	• Answer questions quietly. But if appropriate, mention it to the other participants.
	• Announce to participants when
	  ○ 5 minutes are left (when you see that the participants who are working the slowest on are on questions 25 or 26)
	  ○ 1 minute is left
	  ○ Time is up

2 minutes	• State that the test will be reviewed shortly • Collect the End-of-Course Evaluations
30 minutes	**Total Time for Posttest**

Review of Answers to the RVCT Self-Study Posttest

Estimated Time	Description	Materials Needed

1 minutes	**Introduce the Posttest Review**
	• Explain that each item on the test will be reviewed
	• Describe how they can grade their own Posttest
	  ○ They can grade their own test on the Answer Sheets. Because they will turn the Answer Sheet at the end of the course they should not change their original answers. But they can mark the incorrect answers and indicate in the right column what the correct answers are.
	  ○ They can also mark the incorrect/correct answers on the actual Posttests that they can keep.
		• RVCT Self-Study Posttest Answer Key (1 per facilitator)

27 minutes	• Review each question and answer • Ask for volunteers to read the question and provide the answer • Check to see if other participants have other answers	
2 minutes	• Collect all of the Answer Sheets	
30 minutes	**Total Time for the Review of the Posttest**	

Closing

Estimated Time	Description	Materials Needed
5 minutes **Handouts of contact list** 	• Ask if there are any final questions • Thank participants for coming • Explain how important their work is to the process of collecting accurate and reliable data • Emphasize the impact that the data have on the TB program, on their job, and on the patients • Provide contact list of participants, facilitators, and observers	**Contact list of participants, facilitators, and observers**
5 minutes	**Total Time for the Closing**	

Contents

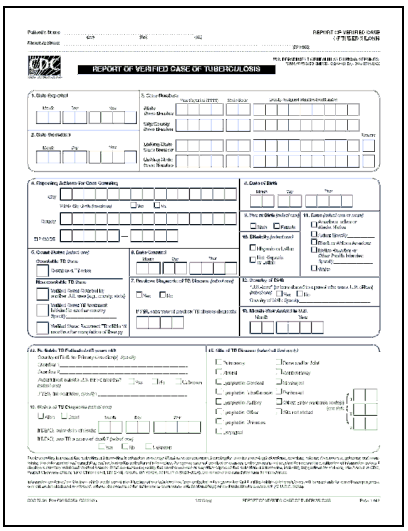
Highlighted items = more complicated

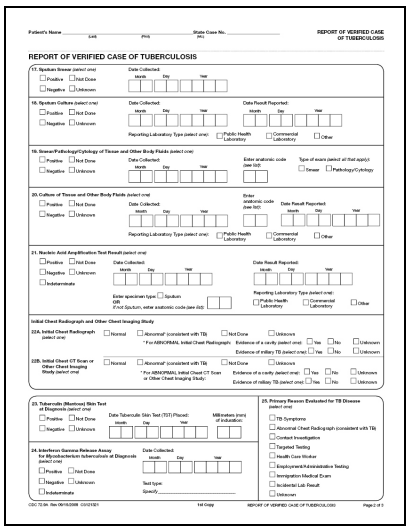
* Status of item refers to whether the items in the revised 2009 RVCT form are new, revised, or have no change.

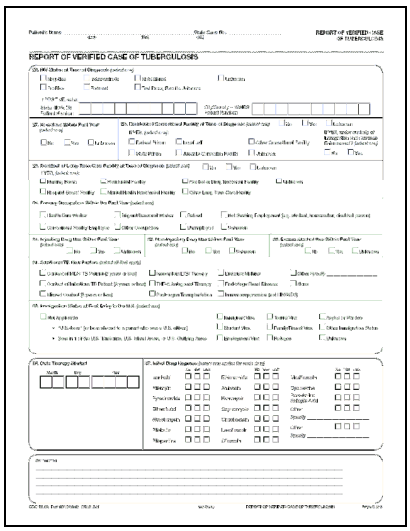
Note: Use of trade names in this publication is for identification purposes only and does not imply endorsement by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

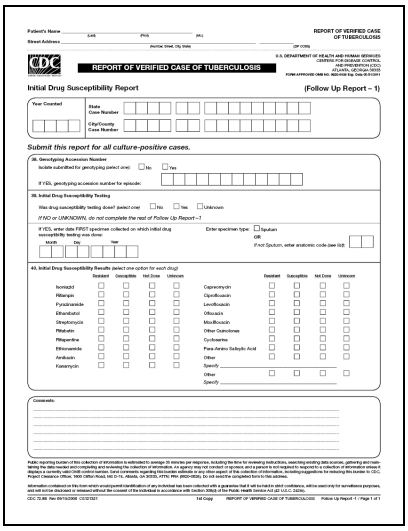
Introduction

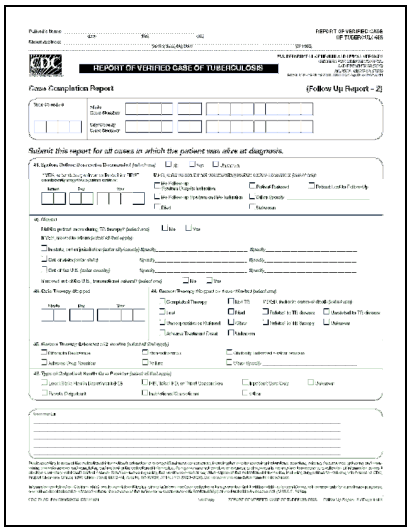
This section provides an introduction to the Report of Verified Case of Tuberculosis and an overview of the form, the instructions, and the RVCT Self-Study Modules, as well as information on continuing education and how to order materials.

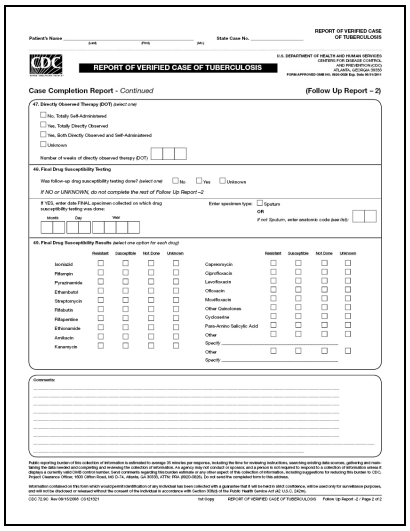












Introduction Topics

Introduction

Background

Tuberculosis (TB) is a nationally notifiable disease, in that reporting is mandated in all states. In 1953, a national surveillance system was established to collect information on new cases of active TB. Since 1985, all states have been reporting TB cases to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) using the Report of Verified Case of Tuberculosis (RVCT), the national TB surveillance form. Data are collected by state and local TB programs and submitted electronically to CDC, Division of Tuberculosis Elimination (DTBE). These data are used to monitor national TB trends, identify priority needs, and create the DTBE annual surveillance report, *Reported Tuberculosis in the United States.*

To control and eventually eliminate TB, state and local TB control programs must be able to monitor trends in TB disease in high-risk populations, as well as identify new patterns of disease and possible outbreaks. The last major revision of the RVCT was completed in 1993. Since 2001, members of a DTBE-sponsored work group consisting of nearly 30 public health professionals from 15 TB control programs, DTBE, and the National TB Controllers Association (NTCA) have been working to revise the RVCT. Modifications to the RVCT data collection now accommodate the changing epidemiology of TB in terms of risk factors, new drug treatments, and enhanced laboratory capacity for diagnostic tests.

Note: A case of TB is defined as an episode of TB disease in a person meeting the laboratory or clinical criteria for TB as defined in Appendix A – Tuberculosis Case Definition for Public Health Surveillance.

Tuberculosis Surveillance Data

Some states may use a modified version of the RVCT or a data collection tool that is unique to their jurisdiction. These forms are used to collect the same data contained in the RVCT. However, just as the actual RVCT form is not sent to CDC, neither are these locally defined variables or additional data. CDC should never receive names of persons with TB. Names are retained by the state or local health department. Locally assigned numbers and characters are used for case identification and are included in **Case Numbers** (item 3) for use by CDC. See **Case Numbers** (item 3) for more information.

Impact of RVCT Data

The revised RVCT will assist TB control programs in gathering accurate and useful data. The additions and changes made to the variables of the RVCT will enable programs to capture data that are more inclusive of a variety of risk factors. These additional data will be essential to efficient and effective TB program management. The following table illustrates how the revised RVCT data can improve TB programs, and the consequences of having inaccurate or incomplete data.

Impact of Revised RVCT Data

Benefits of RVCT Data	Consequences of Inaccurate, Incomplete, or Unknown RVCT Data
• Increased ability to assess program performance, completeness of data collection, and accuracy of reporting • Improved data for program planning and policy development (e.g., personnel, resources, funding) • Facilitation of patient services (e.g., quality of care, continuity of care, sharing of accurate information with patient and health facilities)	• Inaccurate follow-up of services to patients • Inadequate resources (e.g., funding, staff, facilities, drugs, and supplies) • Inaccurate evaluation and policy development • Misrepresentation of the public health burden of TB • Inability to measure TB program indicators that are based on surveillance data

Quality Assurance

Assuring data completeness and quality is encouraged for all case reporting. Each reporting area should develop its own policy or procedure for reviewing and updating incomplete or incorrect data. These procedures should ensure that the data are collected and entered in the surveillance system accurately.

Although health departments share TB surveillance data with CDC, the responsibility and authority for TB surveillance rests with the health department. States vary in the structure and organization of their surveillance systems, and often in the completeness or quality assurance of their case reporting. As with any reportable disease, the completeness of TB reporting reflects how actively health departments solicit case report information. Historically, disease surveillance systems have been categorized as passive or active.

- **Passive surveillance**
  Health departments passively receive case reports from health care providers, depending on the health care providers to know and comply with reporting requirements.
- **Active surveillance**
  Health departments actively contact and interact with health care facilities or individual providers to stimulate disease reporting, sometimes directly assuming the primary responsibility of reporting cases from large or high-volume institutions.

CDC provides funding and technical assistance to health departments to actively stimulate TB case reporting, and has encouraged them to take an active rather than passive approach to TB surveillance. Health departments are encouraged to identify local or private health care facilities that serve TB patients. Health departments are also encouraged to use other data sources to identify TB cases, including death certificates and laboratory reports.

Purpose of the RVCT Self-Study Modules

The purpose of these self-study modules is to help participants learn how to accurately complete the revised RVCT form. The modules can be used either as self-study materials or in a facilitated course.

Target Audience

The target audience includes health care workers who

- Collect the data from patients
- Complete the RVCT form (or local tuberculosis case reporting form specified by the reporting jurisdiction)
- Enter data from the RVCT into the reporting system
- Monitor TB program data collection accuracy
- Analyze data from the RVCT

Course Objectives

After working through these modules, participants will be able to

- Distinguish between the three reports included in the RVCT form
- Recognize the items on the RVCT form
- Use the RVCT instructions to determine how to complete the RVCT form
- Accurately complete the RVCT form

Materials

You will need the following materials when you work through this course.

- Report of Verified Case of Tuberculosis (RVCT form)
- Report of Verified Case of Tuberculosis Self-Study Modules (these modules)
- Appendices: Tuberculosis Case Definition for Public Health Surveillance, Recommendations for Reporting and Counting Tuberculosis Cases, Anatomic Codes, Reporting Area Codes, Country Codes, Glossary, and Answer Key for Exercises

Note: Because some states use their own form (rather than the RVCT), the exercises and posttest are available in Microsoft Word format so they can be adapted for training purposes.

How the Modules Can Be Used

The Report of Verified Case of Tuberculosis Self-Study Modules can be used in the following ways:

2. **For individuals learning through self-study format**
   Health care workers can use the modules according to their needs
   - Working through them at their own pace
     - Completing the whole set of modules without interruption
     - Completing one module at a time (e.g., one module per day)
   - Using them as a reference

3. **As part of a facilitator-led training course**
   The self-study modules can be used as part of a training course that is led by a facilitator.
   - Participants work through the modules
   - Facilitators lead group discussions about the instructions and the exercises and engage the participants in learning how to use the RVCT

   A facilitator's guide is available that includes information on the best way to teach this course to others.

Overview of the RVCT Form

The RVCT form is designed for the collection of information on cases of TB. The expanded RVCT was approved by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) in 2008 to become effective January 2009.

Note: On the RVCT form and throughout this document, the term *state* is used to refer to the reporting jurisdiction (or count authority), though not all jurisdictions are states.

Required and Recommended Uses of the RVCT

The following table indicates the required and recommended uses of the RVCT.

Required Use of the RVCT	Additional Recommended Uses of the RVCT	Possible Use of the RVCT for a Suspected Case of TB
The RVCT **must** be completed for **all verified cases of TB** that are to be included in the reporting area's annual morbidity count.	CDC **recommends** the use of RVCT forms for the collection of data on the following: • Transfer TB cases (e.g., TB cases counted in another state or country) • TB cases that recur **within** 12 months after the completion of therapy	Reporting areas **may** also use the RVCT forms for the collection of data on a suspected case of TB or on a patient with latent TB infection (LTBI).

For the purposes of surveillance, a case of TB is defined on the basis of laboratory and/or clinical evidence of active disease due to *M. tuberculosis* complex. For more information on the case definition of *M. tuberculosis complex,* see Appendix A – Tuberculosis Case Definition for Public Health Surveillance.

Note: The instructions contained in this document do **not** apply to suspected cases of TB or to patients with latent TB infection (LTBI).

RVCT Form

The expanded RVCT form comprises three data collection reports, which are printed in triplicate on carbonless paper:

1. Report of Verified Case of Tuberculosis: Complete this form for all patients with a verified case of TB.
2. Initial Drug Susceptibility Report (Follow-Up Report 1): Complete this form for all patients who had a culture that was positive for *M. tuberculosis* complex.
3. Case Completion Report (Follow-Up Report 2): Complete this form for all patients who were alive when TB was diagnosed.

The two follow-up reports supplement the Report of Verified Case of Tuberculosis.

The three reports in the RVCT form are

- **Not necessarily completed for all patients**
- **Not completed all at one time**.

The following table provides a description of each report, for whom it is completed, and when it is completed.

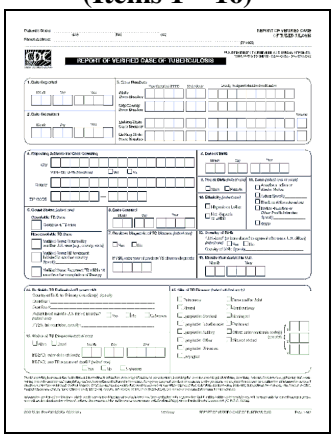
Note: It is strongly recommended that the hard copy of the RVCT form be completed by a health care provider and maintained in the TB patient's medical record in a secured (locked) area.

The Three Reports Comprising the RVCT Form

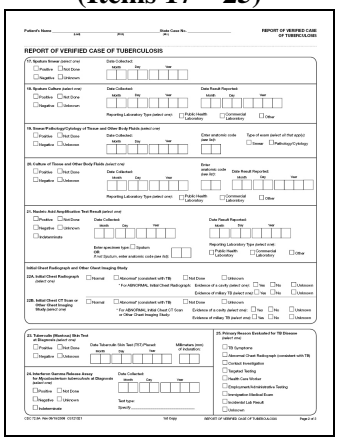
Report of Verified Case of Tuberculosis

- Includes data about patient demographics, laboratory results, and risk associated with TB
- Complete for **all patients with a verified case of TB disease**
- Complete **over time (evaluation process and treatment)** as the information from the patient, the laboratory reports, and medical records become available

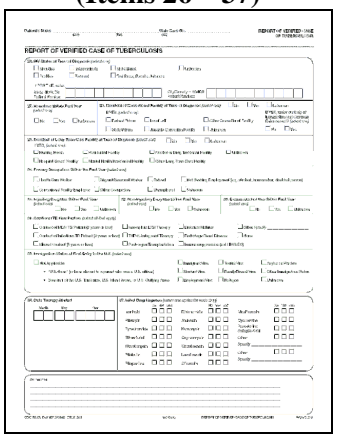
Page 1 (Items 1 – 16)



Page 2 (Items 17 – 25)



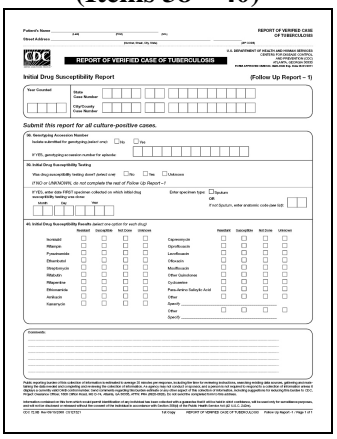
Page 3 (Items 26 – 37)



Initial Drug Susceptibility Report (Follow Up Report - 1)

- Includes genotyping information and drug susceptibility testing results
- Complete for **all patients who had a positive culture result for *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*** complex
- Do not complete for patients with negative culture or no results for culture
- Complete after susceptibility test results are received

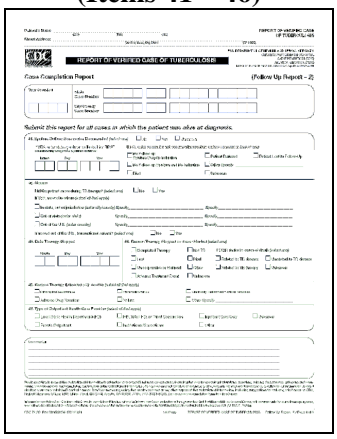
Page 1 (Items 38 – 40)



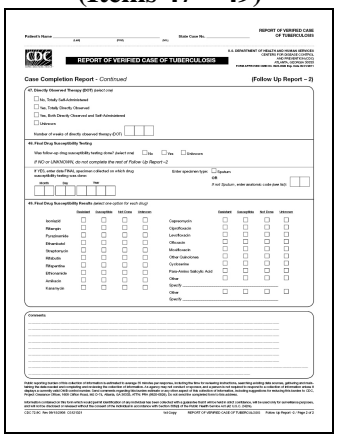
Case Completion Report (Follow Up Report - 2)

- Includes treatment outcomes collected
- Complete for **all patients who were alive when TB was diagnosed**
- Complete after treatment ends; the case completion report is due no later than 2 years after the initial RVCT

Page 1 (Items 41 – 46)



Page 2 (Items 47 – 49)



RVCT Items

The revised RVCT form includes 49 items. The characteristics are varied; for example,

- Some items include one variable response
- Some items include more than one response (e.g., Items 3 and 4)
- Each item is delineated in its own box
- Some boxes are grouped together in larger boxes to visually and logically organize the space

Items are not necessarily listed in the order in which you might receive the information

Data are entered on the RVCT form in several ways:

1. Writing in dates and other numbers (e.g., Items 1, 2, and 3)
2. Checking boxes (e.g., Items 9, 10, and 11)
    a. Select one
    b. Select all that apply
3. Writing in specific information (e.g., Items 12, 14)
4. Writing in comments (e.g., page 3, Follow Up Report–1, or Follow Up Report–2)

Unknown Dates

There are several items that include dates. When entering dates on the form, use "99" for an unknown month or day, and "9999" for an unknown year. This may vary from what will be entered into a computer software program.

- 03 **99** 2009 – for March, unknown day, in 2009
- **99 99** 2009 – for unknown month and day in 2009
- 01 02 **9999** – for January 2, in a year that is unknown

Note: For each item that includes dates, read the instructions carefully about entering month, day, and year. Some items (e.g., **Date Reported**, Item 1) require that the actual month and year **always** need to be entered. For those items, the actual month (not 99) should be entered, and the actual year (not 9999) should be entered.

Pending vs. Unknown Information

Leave the item blank if the information requested is pending (or missing). If a valid value cannot be determined and there is no check-box labeled Unknown, write the word *Unknown* inside the box that encloses the numbered item. This unknown notation will help the person entering the data in the software to know that the person who completed the form attempted to collect the information but was not able to do so. The data entry person will thus be better able to distinguish between data that are unknown and data that are pending (missing). CDC encourages active surveillance or collection of all applicable information. Therefore "unknown" information should be rare.

Updating of Forms

It may be necessary to update RVCT forms if a case is reopened (e.g., a patient who had been lost to follow-up is found) or if previously unavailable information is obtained. CDC recommends highlighting such changes on the hard copy to facilitate data entry into the software system designated by your jurisdiction. When updated data are entered in an electronic record, the new data will automatically overwrite the old data.

Additional Reporting Forms

If the reporting area has its own TB case reporting form and uses it to complete the RVCT variables, the staff should carefully review the RVCT variables and the instructions in this document to ensure that variables on the reporting area's form match those on the RVCT form.

Data Entry and Security

Data obtained from RVCT forms are entered in the software system designated by your jurisdiction and then transmitted electronically to CDC.

Data security is the responsibility of the state or local health department. **Completed RVCT forms should never be sent to CDC.**

Access to the RVCT forms and data entry software should be restricted to individuals authorized to perform TB surveillance activities. Hard copies should be stored in a secured (locked) area. Access to the approved data entry software and local databases should be controlled through the use of a local user identification (user ID) and password. All other electronic surveillance files should also be protected with passwords known only to designated surveillance staff.

Patient Confidentiality

Case numbers must not include personal identifiers. Do not use names, initials, Social Security numbers, addresses, telephone numbers, or other information that could identify a patient.

Because of the sensitive nature of some of the data collected, CDC has provided an Assurance of Confidentiality for the expanded surveillance system. Information on the RVCT forms and in the TB surveillance databases that would permit identification of any individual will be held in confidence and will not be released without the consent of the individual, in accordance with sections 306 and 308(d) of the Public Health Services Act (42 U.S.C. 242k and 242m).

Local patient identifier information, although collected by state and local health departments, is not reported to CDC. Surveillance information reported to CDC is used for statistical and analytic summaries in which no individual can be identified and for special investigations of the natural history and epidemiology of TB.

What Is New in the RVCT

The RVCT form has items that are either new or revised from the previous RVCT that was published in 1993. To help orient previous RVCT users to the new items, the table of contents (at the beginning of this document) indicates which items are new, revised, or unchanged.

The RVCT **State Case Number** (item 3), also known as the RVCT number, has been standardized by adding a 4-digit code for year and a 2-character (alpha) code for state (or jurisdictional code for jurisdictions that are not states) to the 9-character alphanumeric local identifier, so that each state case number is unique for year and state. The additions to the State Case Number will help when trying to identify a TB patient who has been transferred from one health jurisdiction (e.g., state) to another, and when trying to link TB cases (e.g., recurrences, contact investigations).

New and Updated Variables

Eleven new variables were added to improve data collection. These variables (items) are indicated in the table below.

New Variables in the Revised RVCT

Item #	New Variables
5	**Count status**
14	**Pediatric TB patients**
21	**Nucleic acid amplification test**
22B	**Initial chest CT scan or other chest imaging study**
24	**Interferon gamma release assay**
25	**Primary reason evaluated for TB disease**
34	**Additional TB risk factors**
35	**Immigration status**
38	**Genotyping accession number**
42	**Moved**
45	**Reason therapy was extended for more than 12 months**

A new variable called **Count Status** (item 5) was added to separate counted and noncountable TB cases. Data can now be collected on noncountable TB cases to help identify specific cases for analysis and help measure TB morbidity and case management burden. Noncountable cases are verified TB cases that cannot be counted because they do **not** meet the surveillance definition of a countable case.

Additional new variables include TB risk factors, such as diabetes, end-stage renal disease, immunosuppressive therapy, and the use of tumor necrosis factor-alpha antagonists.

Other variables have been updated to reflect the changing field of TB epidemiology and to collect more accurate data on TB cases. Modified variables include the addition of dates of tuberculin skin testing (item 23) and of specimen collection for other diagnostic tests, along with result dates by laboratory type (items 17–21 for smear and culture results).

Recurrences of TB

The new variable, **Count Status** (item 5), allows data collection on the recurrence (more than one separate and distinct episode) of TB. Most recurrences occur within 6–12 months after the completion of therapy. For surveillance purposes, a description of how this is counted is illustrated in the following table.

Counting Reported TB Cases
A patient may have more than 1 discrete (separate and distinct) episode of TB disease

TB Disease Recurs Within a Consecutive 12-month Period After the Patient Completed Therapy	TB Disease Recurs More Than 12 Months After the Patient Completed Therapy
Recurrence is considered the same episode (count only 1 episode as a case for that year; within a 12-month period, **not** calendar year).	Recurrence is considered a separate episode.
Do **not** count as a new case.	Count as a new case.

More information about recurrences of TB is provided in **Case Number** (item 3).

Overview of the RVCT Instructions

The RVCT instructions provide information on how to complete the 49 items on the RVCT form. The instructions provide details about each item, explain the nuances of how to answer the items, and also provide examples to illustrate how to apply the instructions for entering data for a TB case. The instructions are available in two formats.

- **The Report of Verified Case of Tuberculosis Self-Study Modules** (these modules).
  In the modules, the instructions are integrated with exercises (study questions and case studies). This provides an opportunity to practice applying the instructions to life-like situations.

- **The Report of Verified Case of Tuberculosis Instruction Manual**.
  This document includes only the instructions (i.e., the exercises are not included) for each item on the RVCT. It can be used as a reference tool by those who complete the RVCT. For downloading the Instruction Manual from the internet, see the section below on "To View or Order the Materials."

Overview of the RVCT Self-Study Modules

How to Work Through the Modules *(This is IMPORTANT – Be sure to read this)*

Please follow these steps to work through the modules:

1. **Work through the self-study modules**
   - Review an item on the RVCT form
   - Read how to complete the item in the RVCT instructions
   - Complete the exercises (study questions and/or case studies) for the item
   - Use the Appendices as needed

2. **Check your answers**
   - Check your answer(s) in Appendix G - Answer Key for Exercises
     If something is not clear, then for each item that you answered incorrectly, re-read the RVCT instructions and try to complete the exercises again.

Estimated Completion Time for Working through the Modules

The Report of Verified Case of Tuberculosis Self-Study Modules comprise a comprehensive curriculum. The sections of the modules are listed below as well as the estimated completion time for each section.

Sections	Estimated Completion Time
Introduction (this module)	**25 minutes**
Module A – RVCT (page 1) Items 1 – 16	**100 minutes**
Module B – RVCT (page 2) Items 17 – 25	**45 minutes**
Module C – RVCT (page 3) Items 26 – 37	**55 minutes**
Module D – The Initial Drug Susceptibility Report (Follow Up Report – 1) Items 38 – 40	**20 minutes**
Module E – The Case Completion Report (Follow Up Report – 2) Items 41 – 49	**55 minutes**
TOTAL Approximate Time	**300 minutes (about 5 hours)**

Materials Needed for Working Through the Modules

The following materials are needed to work through the RVCT Self-Study Modules.

- **The Report of Verified Case of Tuberculosis form**
  This is the 49-item form.

- **RVCT Self-Study Modules**
  The modules consist of the following components:
  - **Instructions for how to complete each item on the RVCT**
    Each item in the RVCT has detailed instructions that explain how to complete the item. **It is very important to read the instructions for an item before answering the study questions.** The instructions provide information on how to interpret the items and options, and provide examples that illustrate how to answer in specified situations.

  - **Exercises**
    The instructions for each item are followed by exercises that will help you apply the instructions to life-like situations and practice completing the RVCT.
    - Each item on the RVCT has at least one exercise
    - Types of exercises include
      - Study questions
      - Case studies
    - Answer choices include
      - Multiple choice
      - Matching
    - **Select the ONE BEST ANSWER for ALL questions**
    - Some items are more complex; those items have several study questions and/or case studies.
    - Because several items are linked to each other (e.g., items 3 and 5 are linked), some case studies include more than one item. These are designed to help you understand how the items are linked.
- **Appendices**
  The following appendices provide information and codes that are used to complete the RVCT:
  - **Appendix A – Tuberculosis Case Definition for Public Health Surveillance**
  - **Appendix B – Recommendations for Reporting and Counting Tuberculosis Cases**
  - **Appendix C – Anatomic Codes**
  - **Appendix D – Reporting Area Codes**
  - **Appendix E – Country Codes**
  - **Appendix F – Glossary**
  - **Appendix G – Answer Key for Exercises**
    This appendix provides answers to each of the exercises. Answer the questions first and then check your answers with the key. Explanations for some of the difficult questions are provided to help you understand the correct answer.

Note: For the purposes of the RVCT Self-Study Modules, use the codes listed in the appendices. Some software programs used to enter data on the RVCT may **NOT** use the codes listed in the appendices. For example, the Anatomic Codes may be a drop-down item where you choose the actual site rather than enter a code. For more information, see instructions for the software you use.

Continuing Education

Continuing Education Units

The following continuing education units are available free of charge after June 1, 2009, for the RVCT Self-Study Modules:

- **Continuing education units (CEUs)**
  The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention has been approved as an Authorized Provider by the International Association for Continuing Education and Training (IACET), 8405 Greensboro Drive, Suite 800, McLean, VA 22102. CDC is authorized by IACET to offer 0.5 CEUs for this program.

- **Continuing medical education (CME)**
  CDC is accredited by the Accreditation Council for Continuing Medical Education (ACCME) to provide continuing medical education for physicians.

  CDC designates this educational activity for a maximum of 5.0 *AMA PRA Category 1 Credits*. Physicians should only claim credit commensurate with the extent of their participation in the activity.

- **Continuing nursing education (CNEs)**
  CDC is accredited as a provider of Continuing Nursing Education by the American Nurses Credentialing Center's Commission on Accreditation.

  This activity provides 5.0 contact hours.

- **Continuing education contact hours (CECH)**
  CDC is a designated provider of continuing education contact hours (CECH) in health education by the National Commission for Health Education Credentialing, Inc. This program is a designated event for the CHES to receive 5.0 Category 1 contact hours in health education, CDC provider number GA0082.

Continuing Education Registration and Test

You can register after June 1, 2009, and take the test for continuing education credits online for the RVCT Self-Study Modules.

Online Registration and Test

To receive continuing education, you must go to CDC's Training and Continuing Education (TCE) Online system to register for this specific course and submit an evaluation.

- Go to http://www2a.cdc.gov/TCEonline.
- Login as a participant (Note: If you are a first-time user of this online system, you will need to login as a new participant and create a participant profile.)
  - When you receive your reset password by email, log in as a participant and change the password.
- At Participant Services, click on Search and Register, type a keyword from the course title into the keyword search, and click View. You can also find the course by typing in the course number. The course number for this activity is SS1502.

- Click on the title of your course, select the type of credit/contact hours you wish to receive at the bottom, and click Submit.
- Verify the demographic information and click Submit at the bottom.
- Complete the course evaluation.
- Complete the course post test (if applicable).
- At Participant Services, click on Certificates and Transcripts and print your continuing education certificate.

For assistance with the online system, call 1(800)-41-TRAIN Monday through Friday from 8:00 AM to 4:00 PM Eastern Standard Time or email ce@cdc.gov.

Disclosure Statement

CDC, our planners, and our presenters, wish to disclose they have no financial interests or other relationships with the manufacturers of commercial products, suppliers of commercial services, or commercial supporters.

Presentations will not include any discussion of the unlabeled use of a product or a product under investigational use.

There was no commercial support received for this activity.

To View or Order the RVCT Materials

The chart on the next page describes the materials in detail and indicates how they can be used, lists the available file formats, and describes how the materials can be ordered and downloaded. There are no charges for ordering the materials from CDC.

	List of RVCT Training Materials (There are no charges for these materials)	Note: the spaces in the FTP URL

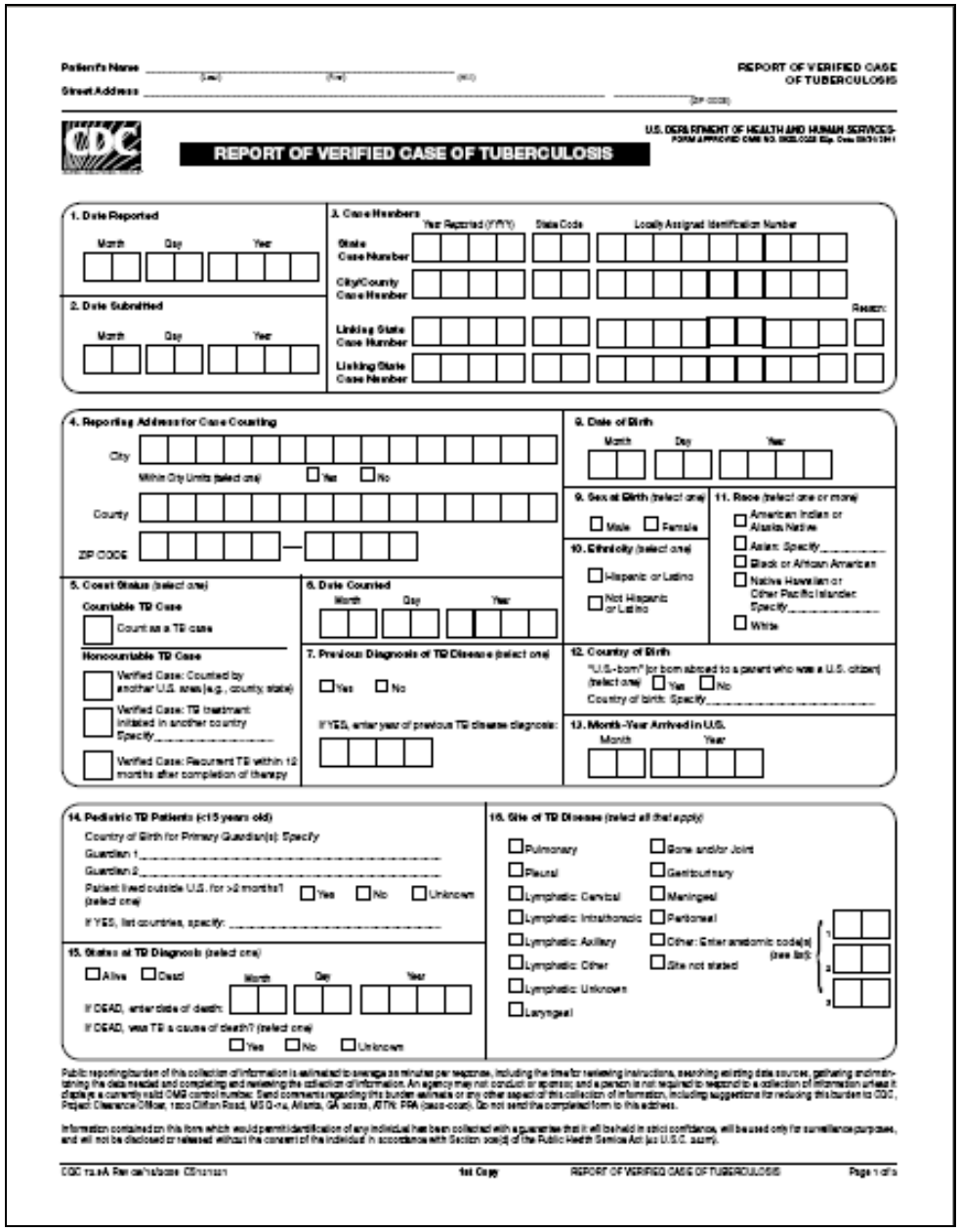
FTP site to download RVCT materials: ftp://ftp.cdc.gov/pub/Software/TIMS/2009 RVCT Documentation/RVCT Training Materials/
CDC/DTBE web site to view and download RVCT materials: www.cdc.gov/tb

Materials	Description	File Formats Available		How to Order
		On FTP site and CD ROM	On CDC/DTBE web site	
RVCT Self-Study Modules Participant Manual (with CD ROM)	Print-based modules to help health care staff learn how to accurately complete the RVCT. Includes • Instructions for how to complete each item on the RVCT • Exercises that will help participants apply the instructions to life-like situations Can be used as self-study or part of a training course.	PDF	PDF	E-mail or Fax RVCT Materials Order Form (see form for instructions)
RVCT Self-Study Modules Facilitator Manual (with CD ROM)	Print-based modules for facilitators who will teach health care staff how to complete the RVCT. Contains the same content as the RVCT Self-Study Modules Participant Manual plus training materials for facilitators. • Instructions for how to complete each item on the RVCT • Exercises that will help participants apply the instructions to life-like situations • Facilitator guide, answers to exercises, and other training documents	PDF of manual. Various formats for other training documents		E-mail or Fax RVCT Materials Order Form (see form for instructions)
RVCT Instruction Manual	Print-based document includes instructions for how to complete each item on the RVCT. Can be used as a reference guide when completing the RVCT. (Does **not** include the exercises from the Self-Study Modules.)	PDF	PDF	
RVCT Self-Study Modules Exercises	Print-based document includes **only** the exercises (with answers) used in the Self-Study Modules Participant Manual. (Does **not** include the instructions for how to complete each item on the RVCT.) Exercises can be used and adapted by local jurisdictions.	Microsoft Word		(Available only on the FTP site or CD ROM)
RVCT Materials Description	Description of the RVCT materials	PDF	HTML	
RVCT Materials Order Form	Form used to order the RVCT materials from CDC.	Microsoft Word		E-mail or Fax RVCT Materials Order Form (see form for instructions)
RVCT Materials CD ROM	For those who want to order the CD ROM **only**. Includes the electronic files of the following documents: • RVCT Participant Manual • RVCT Facilitator Manual and training materials • RVCT Instruction Manual • RVCT Self-Study Module Exercises • RVCT Materials Description • RVCT Materials Order Form	Various formats		E-mail or Fax RVCT Materials Order Form (see form for instructions)

Module A – RVCT
(page 1 of 3)
Items 1 – 16

The RVCT report includes the first three pages of the RVCT data collection form. Pages 1, 2, and 3 of the RVCT report will be covered in Modules A, B, and C, respectively. **Complete this report for all patients with a verified case of TB disease.**

Module A provides instructions and exercises for completing page 1 of the RVCT report. This page includes data about patient demographics and site of disease.



Patient's Name _____ (Last) (First) (MI)

Street Address _____ (ZIP CODE)

REPORT OF VERIFIED CASE OF TUBERCULOSIS

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES
FORM APPROVED OMB NO. 0920-0026 Exp. Date 03/31/2001

REPORT OF VERIFIED CASE OF TUBERCULOSIS

1. Date Reported — Month Day Year

2. Date Submitted — Month Day Year

3. Case Numbers — Year Reported (YYYY) | State Code | Locally Assigned Identification Number
State Case Number
City/County Case Number
Linking State Case Number
Linking State Case Number
Reason:

4. Reporting Address for Case Counting
City
Within City Limits (select one) ☐ Yes ☐ No
County
ZIP CODE

5. Count Status (select one)
Countable TB Case
☐ Count as a TB case
Noncountable TB Case
☐ Verified Case: Counted by another U.S. area (e.g., county, state)
☐ Verified Case: TB treatment initiated in another country Specify_____
☐ Verified Case: Recurrent TB within 12 months after completion of therapy

6. Date Counted — Month Day Year

7. Previous Diagnosis of TB Disease (select one) ☐ Yes ☐ No
If YES, enter year of previous TB disease diagnosis:

8. Date of Birth — Month Day Year

9. Sex at Birth (select one) ☐ Male ☐ Female

10. Ethnicity (select one)
☐ Hispanic or Latino
☐ Not Hispanic or Latino

11. Race (select one or more)
☐ American Indian or Alaska Native
☐ Asian: Specify_____
☐ Black or African American
☐ Native Hawaiian or Other Pacific Islander: Specify_____
☐ White

12. Country of Birth
"U.S.-born" [or born abroad to a parent who was a U.S. citizen] (select one) ☐ Yes ☐ No
Country of birth: Specify_____

13. Month–Year Arrived in U.S. — Month Year

14. Pediatric TB Patients (<15 years old)
Country of Birth for Primary Guardian(s): Specify
Guardian 1_____
Guardian 2_____
Patient lived outside U.S. for >2 months? (select one) ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ Unknown
If YES, list countries, specify: _____

15. Site of TB Disease (select all that apply)
☐ Pulmonary
☐ Pleural
☐ Lymphatic: Cervical
☐ Lymphatic: Intrathoracic
☐ Lymphatic: Axillary
☐ Lymphatic: Other
☐ Lymphatic: Unknown
☐ Laryngeal
☐ Bone and/or Joint
☐ Genitourinary
☐ Meningeal
☐ Peritoneal
☐ Other: Enter anatomic code(s) (see list): 1 2 3
☐ Site not stated

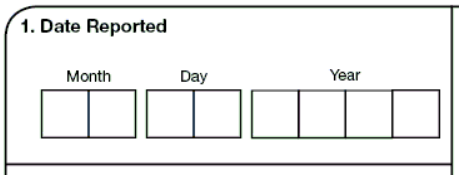
16. Status at TB Diagnosis (select one)
☐ Alive ☐ Dead
If DEAD, enter date of death: Month Day Year
If DEAD, was TB a cause of death? (select one) ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ Unknown

Public reporting burden of this collection of information is estimated to average xx minutes per response, including the time for reviewing instructions, searching existing data sources, gathering and maintaining the data needed and completing and reviewing the collection of information. An agency may not conduct or sponsor, and a person is not required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a currently valid OMB control number. Send comments regarding this burden estimate or any other aspect of this collection of information, including suggestions for reducing this burden to CDC, Project Clearance Officer, 1600 Clifton Road, MS D-74, Atlanta, GA 30333, ATTN: PRA (xxxx-xxxx). Do not send the completed form to this address.

Information contained on this form which would permit identification of any individual has been collected with a guarantee that it will be held in strict confidence, will be used only for surveillance purposes, and will not be disclosed or released without the consent of the individual in accordance with Section xxx(d) of the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. xxxx).

CDC 72.5.A Revised/Update CD/mm/yy — 1st Copy — REPORT OF VERIFIED CASE OF TUBERCULOSIS — Page 1 of 3

1. Date Reported



Primary Purpose: Case management. Data are used to determine when the health department or counting authority was first notified that a person may have TB. This is important in contact investigations.

Note: Item 1 requires that the actual month and year **always** be entered. The actual month (not 99) should be entered and the actual year (not 9999) should be entered.

	Description	Comment
Month, day, and year (e.g., 01/17/2009)	Date that a health department (e.g., local, county, state) first **suspected** that the patient may have TB. **or** Date the health department received notification (verbal or written) from a health care provider that a patient was **suspected of having TB**.	If the day is unknown, enter 99 as the default value (e.g., 01/99/2009). In this item, the **actual month and year always need to be entered.** Do **not** use 99 for the month or 9999 for the year.

Comment: Date Reported
If the patient had a previous diagnosis of tuberculosis, **Date Reported** applies to the current TB episode.

Note: On the form and throughout this document, the term *state* is used to refer to the reporting jurisdiction (or count authority), though all jurisdictions are **not** states.

Comparison of
Date Reported (Item 1), Date Submitted (Item 2), and Date Counted (Item 6)

Date Reported (Item 1)

- Date the health department (local, county, or state) **first suspected that a patient has TB**

  or

- Date the health department **receives notification (verbal or written)** from a health care provider that a patient is suspected of having TB

Often, an RVCT is created by a local or county health department because this is the level at which TB is first suspected, and that also determines the **Date Reported**.

Date Submitted (Item 2)

- Date that the **RVCT was submitted** to the reporting area (e.g., state health department)

Date Counted (Item 6)

- Date that the count authority (usually the state health department, but may be another designated authority) reviewed the RVCT and determined whether **to officially count the case. The count authority determines the Date Counted.**

Comment: Sequence of dates
The **Date Reported** (item 1) usually occurs before the **Date Submitted** (item 2). But sometimes they can occur on the same date. The **Date Submitted** usually occurs before the **Date Counted** (item 6). But all 3 dates could occur on the same date if the count authority determines that it is a case of TB on the same day as the **Date Reported** and **Date Submitted**.

Comment: Who determines the dates
In most reporting areas (e.g., state), the state health department has count authority and reviews the RVCT to determine whether to officially count the case (**Date Counted**). However, a few states have granted local or county health departments count authority. In these states, the local or county health departments determine the **Date Counted** (see **Date Submitted** [item 2] and **Date Counted** [item 6]).

Summary of Date Reported, Date Submitted, and Date Counted

Type of Date	Who/What	Description of Action
Date Reported (item 1)	**TB suspect**	**Reported** to the health department (either by the health department itself or another health care provider)
Date Submitted (item 2)	**RVCT form**	**Submitted** to the reporting area (e.g., state health department)
Date Counted (item 6)	**TB Case**	**Counted as a case of TB** (by the count authority)

Comment: Date Reported
Often, an RVCT is created by a local or county health department because this is the level at which TB is first suspected, and determines **Date Reported** (item 1). If a health care provider suspects that the patient may have TB and then notifies the local or county health department, the **Date Reported** is the date the health department received the report (verbal or written notification) from the health care provider.

Example: Year Reported
A case reported in December may not be counted until the next year. For example, if a case is reported in December 2008 but not counted until January 2009, the Year Reported for the **case number** would be 2008.

Exercise
1. Date Reported

Note: Date Reported (item 1) is frequently confused with **Date Submitted** (item 2) and **Date Counted** (item 6). Read the instructions for each of the items to understand the differences. In the exercises for item 6, there is a study question and case study that involves all three items to help you learn the differences.

For all questions in the Self-Study Modules, choose the one best answer.

1.1 The Date Reported is the date that the health department …
(circle the one best answer)

A. First suspects that the patient has TB

B. Receives notification from a health care provider that the patient is suspected of having TB

C. Submits the RVCT to the reporting area

D. A, B, and C are all correct

X E. Only A and B are correct

1.2 How would January 3, 2009, be entered as the date for Date Reported?
(circle the one best answer)

A.

Month		Day		Year			
J	A	0	3	2	0	0	9

X B.

Month		Day		Year			
0	1	0	3	2	0	0	9

1.3 How would February 2009 be entered as the date for Date Reported? The exact day of the month is not known.
(circle the one best answer)

X **A.**

Month		Day		Year			
0	2	9	9	2	0	0	9

B.

Month		Day		Year			
0	2	0	0	2	0	0	9

Note for answer: For this item, **the month and year always need to be entered**. But if the exact day is **not** known, enter 99.

It is important to read the instructions for entering the dates for each item because they can vary from item to item. For some items enter "99" for the unknown month or day, and "9999" for the unknown year. This may vary from what will be entered into a computer software program.

- 03 **99** 2009 – for March, unknown day, in 2009
- **99 99** 2009 – for unknown month and day in 2009
- 01 02 **9999** – for January 2, in a year that is unknown

Case Study – Rose

On January 6, 2009, Dr. Joseph, a private physician, calls to notify the county health department about Rose, a patient who has signs and symptoms of TB. On January 10, the county health department receives a faxed copy of the laboratory results indicating that Rose's sputum is AFB smear positive. Then on January 27, the RVCT form is completed by the county health department and sent to the state TB program.

1.4 Which date would you enter as the Date Reported?
(circle the one best answer)

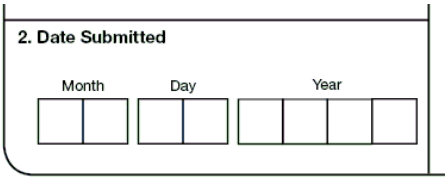
X **A.** January 6, 2009

B. January 10, 2009

C. January 27, 2009

Note for answer: The **Date Reported** is the date that a health department **first suspects** that the patient might have TB or first receives a report (verbal or written notification) from a health care provider. In this instance, the **Date Reported** is January 6. January 10 is the date that the county health department received laboratory results confirming TB diagnosis. January 27 is the **Date Submitted**.

2. Date Submitted



Primary Purpose: Programmatic function. Data are used to evaluate the time between case report and submission to the health department or count authority.

	Description	Comment
Month, day, and year (e.g., 01/17/2009)	Date the RVCT form was submitted to the reporting area (e.g., state health department).	If the day is unknown, enter 99 as the default value (e.g., 01/99/2009). (**Note:** this may vary from what will be entered into a computer software program)

Summary of Date Reported, Date Submitted, and Date Counted

Type of Date	Who/What	Description of Action
Date Reported (item 1)	**TB suspect**	**Reported** to the health department (either by the health department itself or another health care provider)
Date Submitted (item 2)	**RVCT form**	**Submitted** to the reporting area (e.g., state health department)
Date Counted (item 6)	**TB Case**	**Counted as a Case of TB** (by the count authority)

Comment: Date Submitted
In most cases, the RVCT is completed by the health department (local or county) and submitted to the reporting area (state health department). In some locations, the RVCT may be completed and the case counted at the state level.

Note: On the RVCT form and throughout this document, the term *state* is used to refer to the reporting jurisdiction (or count authority), though not all jurisdictions are states.

Exercise
2. Date Submitted

2.1 The Date Submitted is the date that the…
(circle the one best answer)

A. Sputum sample is submitted to the laboratory

X B. RVCT is submitted to the reporting area

C. Laboratory submits a confirmed diagnosis of TB to the health department

D. A, B, and C are all correct

E. Only A and B are correct

Case Study – Sue

On June 1, 2009, Sue, the health care worker at a county TB program, completes the RVCT for a patient from the TB clinic. On June 30, Sue sends the RVCT to the state TB program. On July 10, 2009, the state TB program determines that it is a case of TB.

2.2 Which date would you enter as Date Submitted?
(circle the one best answer)

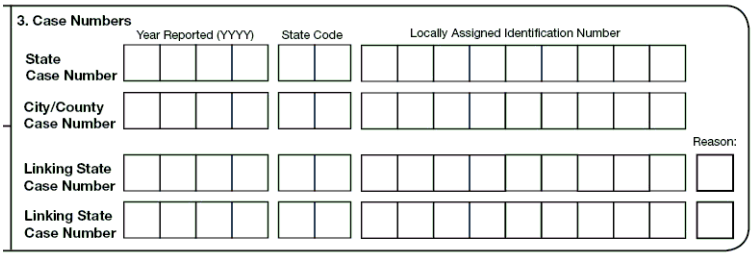
A. June 1, 2009

X B. June 30, 2009

C. July 10, 2009

Note for answer: Date Submitted is June 30 because this was the date that the RVCT form is **submitted** to the reporting area. June 1 is the **date reported** and July 10 is the **date counted**.

3. Case Numbers



Primary Purpose: Surveillance. A unique number is assigned to each case without personal identifiers.

Note: On the form and throughout this document, the term *state* is used to refer to the reporting jurisdiction (or count authority), though not all jurisdictions are states.

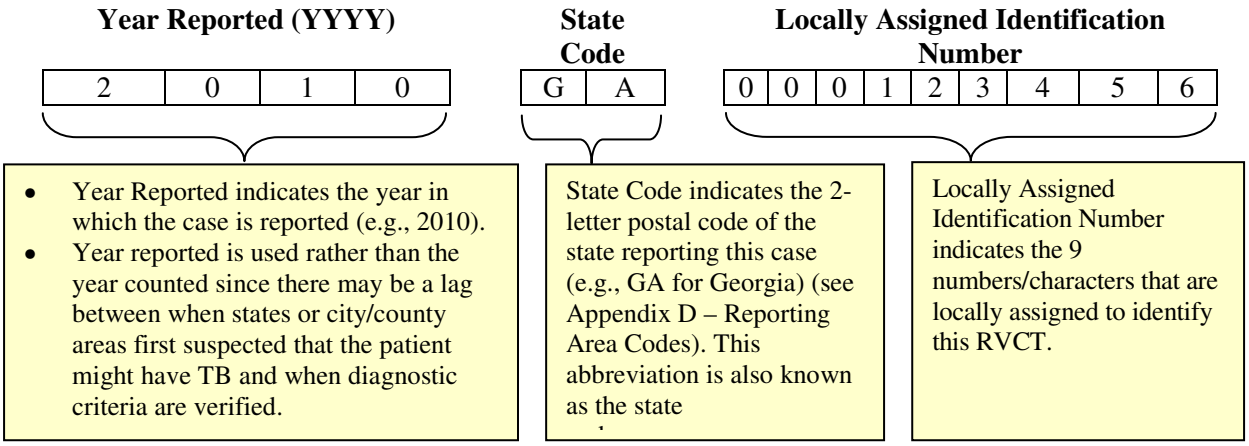
State Case Number
The **State Case Number** is the **official identification number for the case**. If additional communication about a record is required between CDC and a reporting area, this number is used to identify the record. The **State Case Number** is commonly known as the RVCT number.

City/County Case Number
List the **City/County Case Number**. Every case reported, whether from a city/county or state surveillance system, must have a unique case number for identification purposes.

Comment: Case Numbers
A single case may be assigned identical **City/County Case** and **State Case Numbers**. A **City/County Case Number** may not be assigned to more than one case during a calendar year. Similarly, a **State Case Number** may not be assigned to more than one case during a calendar year.

Note: Case numbers must not include personal identifiers. To maintain patient confidentiality, do **not** use names (either patient or provider), initials, Social Security numbers, addresses, telephone numbers, or other information that could identify a patient. Case numbers are transmitted to CDC and therefore must not include personal identifying information.

Assigning case numbers
Both the **State Case Number** and the **City/County Case Number** have 15 alphanumeric characters.



Example: Year Reported
A case reported in December may not be counted until the next year. For example, if a case is reported in December 2008 but not counted until January 2009, the Year Reported for the **case number** would be 2008.

Note: All countable and noncountable TB cases should receive a unique case number. Documenting noncountable cases provides evidence of increased workload or burden to programs when cases are **not** countable.

Note: For the purposes of the RVCT Materials, use the codes listed in the appendices. Some software programs used to enter data on the RVCT may **NOT** use the codes listed in the appendices. For example, the Anatomic Codes may be a drop-down item where you choose the actual site rather than enter a code. For more information, see instructions for the software you use.

Linking State Case Numbers
For the purposes of linking RVCT forms, you **may enter as many as 2 RVCT State Case Numbers** under **Linking State Case Number**.

Under **Reason for Linking Case**, explain the purpose of the link by entering one of the single-digit codes indicated in the table below.

Rationale for Linking RVCT Forms

Reason Code	Reason for Linking Case
1	Recurrence **or** Previous diagnosis of TB
2	Epidemiologically linked case, source case, or contact with another case
3	Case transferred from another area

Examples: Reasons for Linking Case

- **Reason 1 – Recurrence or previous diagnosis of TB***
  If you are completing a "recurrence" RVCT for a diagnosis of TB disease in the same patient that recurred **within** 12 months after the completion of therapy, you must enter the RVCT **State Case Number** of the original TB case under **Linking State Case Number**, and enter 1 as the **Reason** code.

  A previous diagnosis of TB can have occurred any time in the past.
  A patient is considered to have had a previous diagnosis of TB disease if
  - TB disease was verified in the past
    or
  - The patient completed therapy (even if the case-to-case interval is within 12 months)*
    or
  - The patient was lost to supervision for more than 12 months and now has verified disease again.

  If a patient had previous TB disease anytime in the past, enter 1 as the **Reason** code.

- **Reason 2 – Epidemiologically linked case, source case, or contact with another case**
  If you have identified the source case for the TB case for which you are completing the RVCT and the RVCT **State Case Number** of the source case is available, enter the RVCT **State Case Number** of the source case under **Linking State Case Number,** and enter 2 as the **Reason** code. Another example of an **Epidemiologically linked case** is transmission of TB from one family member to another.

- **Reason 3 – Case transferred from another area**
  If you are managing a TB case counted by another area, enter the RVCT **State Case Number** of the case from the transferring jurisdiction under **Linking State Case Number,** and enter 3 as the **Reason** code. Transfer cases are linked when the patient is in therapy and transfers from another reporting area. The patient could have moved or appeared at a health department in another area after being lost to follow-up.

*__Note:__ Recurrent cases within 12 months of completion of therapy should be considered noncountable, regardless of whether the initial and the subsequent genotypes are the same or are different.

Comment: Recurrence of TB
A recurrence (more than one separate and distinct episode) is defined as the return of TB disease in a patient whose specimen result can be described by either of the options listed in the table below.

Specimen Results Required for Recurrence of TB Disease

Option	Specimen Result at Time of Diagnosis	Specimen Result While Receiving Anti-TB therapy	Specimen Result After Completion of Therapy
Option 1	**Culture positive**	**Becomes and remains culture negative**	Becomes culture positive for *M. tuberculosis* complex, or clinical or radiologic evidence is consistent with TB disease.
Option 2	**Smear negative or culture negative** (TB diagnosis is based on clinical evidence)	**Remains smear negative or culture negative**	Becomes culture positive for *M. tuberculosis* complex, or clinical or radiologic evidence is consistent with TB disease.

The process for reporting a recurrence of TB is illustrated in the table below.

Process for Reporting a Recurrence of TB
A person may have more than 1 discrete (separate and distinct) episode of TB disease

TB Disease Recurs Within a Consecutive 12-month Period After the Patient Completed Therapy	TB Disease Recurs More Than a Consecutive 12-month Period After the Patient Completed Therapy
Recurrence is considered the same TB episode (count only 1 episode as a case for that year; within a 12-month period, **not** calendar year).	Recurrence is considered a separate TB episode.
Do **not** count as a new case.	Count as a new case.
Count only one TB episode as a case for that year (within a 12-month period, **not** calendar year).	No updates are needed for the initial RVCT form because therapy was completed at least 12 months before the recurrence was diagnosed.
Complete 2 RVCT Forms (Only the initial TB episode is countable) **1) For the initial countable TB episode:** a) Ensure that **Date Therapy Stopped** (item 43) reflects a date of therapy completion before TB recurrence. b) Do not update any other variables on the RVCT form. **2) For the noncountable TB episode:** a) Use a new RVCT **State Case Number** (item 3), that is, a number that is different from the **State Case Number** on the countable TB episode form. b) Enter the countable TB episode **State Case Number** under **Linking State Case Number** and specify as **Reason 1 – Recurrence or previous diagnosis of TB** so that these 2 forms can be linked. c) Check **Verified Case: Recurrent TB within 12 months** for the variable **Count Status** (item 5). d) Complete the remainder of the RVCT form as appropriate. This case will not be included in the TB case count of the reporting area, but will provide valuable information on recurrences **within** 12 months after the completion of therapy. This allows electronic linkage between the countable TB episode and data associated with the recurrence.	**Complete 2 RVCT Forms (Both TB episodes are countable)** **1) For the initial countable TB episode:** a.) Do not update any other variables on the RVCT form. **2) For the second countable TB episode:** a.) Enter a new RVCT **State Case Number** (item 3), different from the **State Case Number** on the initial RVCT form. b.) Enter the initial RVCT **State Case Number**, if available, under **Linking State Case Numbers** and specify as **Reason 1 – Recurrence or previous diagnosis of TB** so that these 2 forms can be linked. c.) Check **Count as a TB Case** for **Count Status** (item 5). Do **not** check **Verified Case: Recurrent TB ≤ 12 months**. d.) Complete the remainder of the RVCT form as appropriate. This TB case will be counted because, for surveillance purposes, it is considered a separate TB episode. Also, it will provide valuable information on recurrences more than 12 months after the completion of therapy. This allows electronic linkage between the initial TB episode and the new TB episode.

Exercise
3. Case Numbers

Case Study – Henry

Henry is diagnosed with TB in June 2008 in Seattle, WA. His TB is counted as a new case and his 2008 locally assigned identification number is 000080301. He successfully completes directly observed therapy on December 12, 2008.

In August 2009, Henry presents to the Seattle hospital emergency room with a recent history of fever, weight loss, and non-productive cough. His subsequent sputum smears are positive. In 2009 he is **reported** as having TB disease, but it is **NOT** counted as a new TB case (i.e., this is less than 12 months since he completed treatment for his prior diagnosis of TB). His 2009 locally assigned identification number is 000090056.

3.1 What is Henry's 2009 State Case Number?
(circle the one best answer)

X A.

Year Reported (YYYY)				State Code		Locally Assigned Identification Number								
2	0	0	9	W	A	0	0	0	0	9	0	0	5	6

B.

Year Reported (YYYY)				State Code		Locally Assigned Identification Number								
2	0	0	9	W	A	0	0	0	0	8	0	3	0	1

3.2 What is his Linking State Case Number?
(circle the one best answer)

A.

Year Reported (YYYY)				State Code		Locally Assigned Identification Number								
2	0	0	8	W	A	0	0	0	0	9	0	0	5	6

X B.

Year Reported (YYYY)				State Code		Locally Assigned Identification Number								
2	0	0	8	W	A	0	0	0	0	8	0	3	0	1

3.3 What is the Reason for the Linking State Case Number?
(circle the one best answer)

X A. Reason 1 – Recurrence or previous diagnosis of TB

B. Reason 2 – Epidemiologically linked case, source case or contact with another case

C. Reason 3 – Case transferred from another area

Case Study – Lisa

In May 2008, Lisa is part of a contact investigation for her brother, who has infectious TB disease. Lisa is evaluated and diagnosed with TB disease also. She starts treatment for TB in June 2008.

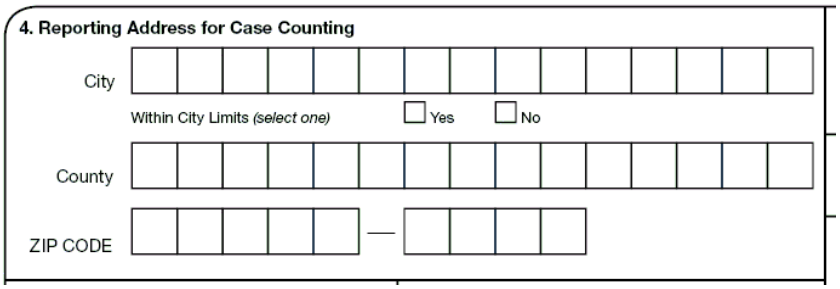
3.4 For Item 3 Case Number, what would you choose as the reason for the Linking State Case Number for Lisa?
(circle the one best answer)

A. Reason 1 – Recurrence or previous diagnosis of TB

X **B.** Reason 2 – Epidemiologically linked case, source case, or contact with another case

C. Reason 3 – Case transferred from another area

4. Reporting Address for Case Counting



Primary Purpose: Programmatic function. Data are used to document the patient's address from the state or jurisdiction that is counting the case.

The Reporting Address for Case Counting is usually the **City**, **County**, and **ZIP Code** of the **patient's residence at the time of diagnosis**. But there are exceptions to this, which are indicated in the Guidelines to Determine Reporting Address for Case Counting table below. To the extent possible, the address for case counting should represent the home address (whether permanent or temporary) of the patient. Recommendations for counting reported TB cases are outlined in Appendix B – Recommendations for Reporting and Counting Tuberculosis Cases.

Note: For countable and noncountable cases, enter the TB patient's address from the state or jurisdiction that is reporting and documenting the case.

For **Within City Limits** select the best option.

Option *(select one)*	Description
Yes	Patient lives within the city limits
No	Patient does **not** live within the city limits

Guidelines to Determine Reporting Address

	Patient Scenarios	How to Count	Reporting Address
Specific Populations (these groups supersede Specific Locations, but not Other People Entering the United States)	**Migrant, immigrant** (i.e., resident alien living in the United States)**, U.S. military personnel, and other transient persons**	Count in the area in which he/she lived at the time that the TB diagnostic evaluation was performed or initiated	Enter city, county, and ZIP Code **where he/she lives at the time of diagnosis**
	Homeless or does not have a fixed residence	Count in area in which he/she was living at the time that the TB diagnostic evaluation was performed or initiated (e.g., the locality of the shelter or area in which the patient was living)	Enter city, county, and ZIP Code **of that locality**
	Resident of correctional facility at time of TB diagnosis (e.g. local, state, federal, military)	Count in area in which the correctional facility is located at the time that the TB diagnostic evaluation was performed or initiated	Enter city, county, and ZIP Code of the **correctional facility**
	Resident of long-term care facility at time of TB diagnosis	Count in area in which the long-term care facility is located at the time that the TB diagnostic evaluation was performed or initiated	Enter city, county, and ZIP Code of the **long-term care facility**
Specific Locations	**Receives a new TB diagnosis in the community that he/she considers home**	Count in the morbidity count for that area	Enter city, county, and ZIP Code of **residence**
	Receives a new TB diagnosis, but is an out-of-area resident and will return home for treatment	Count in morbidity count of their home area	Enter city, county, and ZIP Code of his/her **home area**
	Receives a new TB diagnosis, but is an out-of-area resident and completes therapy where he/she was diagnosed	Count in morbidity count where they live at the time that the TB diagnostic evaluation was performed or initiated	Enter city, county, and ZIP Code **where he/she lives at the time of diagnosis**
	Staying in a community only for TB diagnosis and hospitalization	Count in the morbidity count of his/her area of residence, **not** the community where diagnosed and hospitalized. Communication between health departments may be necessary to decide which jurisdiction will count the case.	Enter city, county, and ZIP Code of his/her **home area**

Other People Entering the United States	**Foreign visitor** who receives a TB diagnosis in the United States, is receiving anti-TB therapy, and has been, or plans to remain, in the country for **90 days or more**	Count in the area in which he/she lived at the time that the TB diagnostic evaluation was performed or initiated	Enter city, county, and ZIP Code of **current residence**
	Foreign visitor who receives a diagnosis of TB in the United States, is receiving anti-TB therapy, and has been, or plans to remain, in the country for **less than 90 days**	Should **not** be included in the count of TB cases in the United States.	Enter city, county, and ZIP Code of **current residence**
	Receives a diagnosis of TB before arriving in the United States	Should **not** be included in the count of TB cases in the United States. Submit it as a noncountable case because the case is considered to have occurred in another country, even if therapy is continued or completed in the United States.	Enter city, county, and ZIP Code of **current residence**

Comment: People Entering the United States
For additional information on immigrants, refugees, permanent resident aliens, border crossers, and foreign visitors see Appendix B – Recommendations for Reporting and Counting Tuberculosis Cases.

Guidelines for classifying transfer cases
A total of 60 areas are responsible for reporting cases of TB to CDC. These reporting areas are the 50 states, the District of Columbia, New York City, Puerto Rico, American Samoa, the Federated States of Micronesia, Guam, the Republic of the Marshall Islands, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, the Republic of Palau, and the U.S. Virgin Islands. Because of the additional (follow-up) reporting requirements for expanded surveillance, specific instructions are necessary for the completion of forms for patients who move within a reporting area and for those who move from one reporting area to another during treatment.

- To minimize the number of TB patients who are lost to follow-up, update the patient's street address regularly during treatment.

- Periodically, ask patients whether they anticipate moving so that arrangements can be made to maintain continuity of care and ensure submission of follow-up RVCTs. Encourage patients who anticipate moving to report their new address, so that necessary patient information can be forwarded to health care providers, and to the TB control program in the area to which the patient is moving. Health departments should use the National TB Controllers Association (NTCA) Interjurisdictional Tuberculosis Notification and Follow-up forms to notify TB control program staff in another reporting area that a TB patient is moving to their area.

  Communication between TB control programs to ensure continuity of care and submission of follow-up reports regarding a patient who is moving from one area to another should be conducted as efficiently and securely as possible (e.g., telephone, e-mail, fax, express courier).

Example: Moves within the reporting area
If a TB patient with an existing RVCT record moves within the reporting area that initially reported the case (e.g., from county A to county B within a state), communication between county or local health departments may be all that is necessary to maintain continuity of care and ensure submission of follow-up reports for the RVCT. In this instance, the responsibility for following the case to closure and for submitting follow-up reports to CDC remains with the initial reporting area (e.g., the state). To avoid duplicate case reporting, the state may need to coordinate the submission of forms with counties A and B so that only one counted case is submitted. County B can complete a noncountable RVCT to gather surveillance data and demonstrate patient management.

Example: Moves from one reporting area to another
If a TB patient with an RVCT record moves from one reporting area to another (e.g., from state A [Louisiana] to state B [Georgia]), the responsibility for submitting follow-up reports to CDC remains with the state or reporting area that initially reported the case to CDC and counted it (e.g., state A [Louisiana]). This responsibility remains with the initial area only for surveillance purposes (i.e., to minimize duplication of case reports and to simplify the reporting of the final disposition of the case). In other words, state B will conduct case management and follow-up and will then share follow-up surveillance information with state A, which will officially submit follow-up information to CDC. State B is encouraged to complete an RVCT for a noncountable transfer case.

To facilitate this process, state A should send the NTCA Interjurisdictional Tuberculosis Notification and Follow-up forms to state B and should inform state B that the case has been reported to CDC and counted. State A should also inform state B of the surveillance information that has been reported to CDC and the information that will need to be collected by state B and forwarded to state A for reporting to CDC. State B should use the forms to inform state A when or if the TB patient has been located and to inform state A of the final disposition of the case (e.g., patient completed therapy, patient died).

Comment: Definition for Migrant/seasonal worker
A migrant or seasonal worker is a person who is required to be absent from a permanent place of residence for the purpose of seeking employment or who may vary their employment for the purpose of remaining employed while maintaining a permanent place of residence.

Examples: Migrant/seasonal worker
- Migratory agricultural worker
- Seasonal agricultural worker
- Migrant factory worker
- Migrant construction worker
- Migrant service industry worker
- Migrant sporting worker (e.g., horse racing, dog racing)

Comments: Definitions for Homeless

There are many definitions for *homeless* (National Coalition for the Homeless). A **homeless** person may be an individual who has

1. No fixed, regular, and adequate nighttime residence
   and
2. A primary nighttime residence that is
   a. A supervised publicly or privately operated shelter designed to provide temporary living accommodations, including welfare hotels, congregate shelters, and transitional housing for the mentally ill
      or
   b. An institution that provides a temporary residence for individuals intended to be institutionalized
      or
   c. A public or private place not designated for, or ordinarily used as, a regular sleeping accommodation for human beings.

A **homeless** person may also be defined as a person who has no home (e.g., is not paying rent, does not own a home, and is not steadily living with relatives or friends). Persons in unstable housing situations (e.g., alternating between multiple residences for short stays of uncertain duration) may also be considered homeless.

A **homeless** person may be a person who lacks customary and regular access to a conventional dwelling or residence. Included as homeless are persons who live on streets or in nonresidential buildings. Also included are residents of homeless shelters and shelters for battered women. Residents of welfare hotels, and single room occupancy (SRO) hotels could also be considered homeless. In the rural setting, where there are usually few shelters, a homeless person may live in non-residential structures, or substandard housing, or with relatives. *Homeless* does not refer to a person who is imprisoned or in a correctional facility.

Note: The homeless category is limited to living conditions in the United States and does **not** apply to living in refugee camps outside the United States.

Exercise
4. Reporting Address for Case Counting

Case Study – Laverne

Laverne lives in Chicago, Illinois. On May 1, 2009, she visits her sister Shirley in Milwaukee, Wisconsin, for a month. During the visit Laverne develops a bad cough and fever. She goes to the Milwaukee health clinic and is diagnosed with TB disease. On June 2 Laverne returns home to Chicago, where she completes treatment.

4.1 What reporting address should be entered on the 2009 RVCT for Laverne?
(circle the one best answer)

X **A.** Chicago, Illinois

B. Milwaukee, Wisconsin

Note for answer: Laverne receives a new diagnosis in Milwaukee, but is an out-of-area resident and returns home for treatment. The reporting address should be her address in Chicago.

Case Study – Eduardo

Eduardo, a migrant worker, resides with his family in Sacramento, California. He travels south to work the strawberry harvest every year beginning in February. During harvest season, he lives in a boarding facility in the city of Watsonville, California. In May 2009, Eduardo is diagnosed with TB as part of a Watsonville screening program for migrant workers and begins treatment. After 2 months of treatment, he returns home to Sacramento, where he completes treatment.

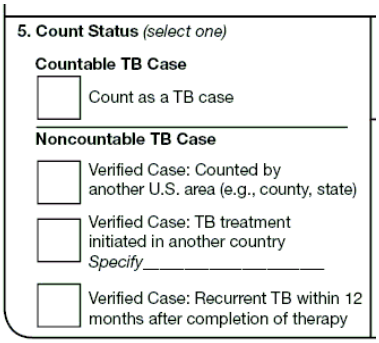
4.2 What reporting address should be entered on the 2009 RVCT?
(circle the one best answer)

A. Sacramento

X **B.** Watsonville

Note for answer: Eduardo, a migrant worker, receives a new diagnosis, but is an out-of-area resident. Because of his migrant status, the reporting address for Eduardo should be the area in which he lives at the time of diagnosis, which is Watsonville. In addition, he should also be counted in the area in which he lives at the time of diagnosis (Watsonville), even if he returned to his permanent home in Sacramento for treatment. For more information on determining the reporting address for patients, see the Guidelines to Determine Reporting Address in the instructions for **Reporting Address for Case Counting** (item 4). For more information about how cases should be counted, see **Count Status** (item 5).

5. Count Status



Primary Purpose: Surveillance. Data are used to document the number of TB cases and disease trends that occur in the United States; to determine the burden of TB disease within all areas; and to serve as a basis for allocation of resources, including funding.

In addition to requiring the completion of an RVCT form for all counted TB cases, CDC recommends that a reporting area complete an RVCT form for TB patients being managed in that area but counted by another reporting area, even though the area providing case management cannot include such cases in its annual morbidity count. This will help indicate the burden of disease within all areas. Moreover, CDC recommends that a reporting area complete an RVCT form for TB recurrences which are **within** 12 months after the completion of therapy, which are also not included in the annual morbidity count. For CDC guidelines on counting TB cases, see Appendix B – Recommendations for Reporting and Counting Tuberculosis Cases.

Countable TB Case

Option	Description
Count as a TB case	Officially counted as a TB case, by the jurisdiction with count authority (usually state health department).
	For a diagnosis to be counted as a TB case, it must meet the following criteria: 1. Is a verified case of TB (see Case Definition for Tuberculosis below) 2. Confirmed that it is **NOT** counted by another area 3. Meets surveillance definition and is **NOT** a recurrent case (within 12 months of completion of therapy) of TB

Note: A case of TB is defined as an episode of TB disease in a person meeting the laboratory or clinical criteria for TB as defined in Appendix A – Tuberculosis Case Definition for Public Health Surveillance for criteria.

Note: Communication between TB control programs to ensure continuity of care and submission of reports regarding a patient who is moving from one area to another should be conducted as securely and efficiently as possible (e.g., telephone, e-mail, secure fax, express courier).

Noncountable TB Case

If the verified TB case was **not** counted by the jurisdiction with count authority, select one option to indicate the reason the verified TB case was noncountable.

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
Counted by another area (e.g., county, state, or counting authority)	TB case counted by another U.S. area such as a state or other counting authority (e.g., transfer in)	Typically, diagnostic workup has been completed, and patient is receiving anti-TB medications. Count authority includes the U.S. Territories, U.S. Island Areas, and U.S. Outlying Areas.
TB treatment initiated in another country	TB case counted by another country Under **Specify**, enter the country where TB treatment was initiated.	It may be difficult to verify whether a case has been counted in another country because typically, diagnostic work-up may have been completed and patient is receiving anti-TB medications.
Recurrent TB within 12 months after completion of therapy	Complete a new RVCT form because of recurrence **within** 12 months **after the completion of therapy** (not when therapy was initiated)	Completing a new RVCT form allows the RVCT forms to be linked and information on the recurrence to be collected.

Comment: 12 months
The term 12 months refers to 12 consecutive months, not a calendar year.

Comment: U.S. Territories, U.S. Island Areas, and U.S. Outlying Areas
Counted by another area or counting authority includes the U.S. Territories, U.S. Island Areas, and U.S. Outlying Areas (e.g., Puerto Rico, American Samoa, Federated States of Micronesia, Guam, Republic of the Marshall Islands, Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, Republic of Palau, U.S. Virgin Islands). These independent countries have Compacts of Free Association with the United States; under these compacts, the countries are fully sovereign in domestic and foreign affairs, but give responsibility for their health, education, defense, and other essential operations to the United States.

Counting Recurrent TB Cases

A person may have more than 1 discrete (separate and distinct) episode of TB disease

TB Disease Recurs Within a Consecutive 12-month Period After the Patient Completed Therapy	TB Disease Recurs More Than 12 Months After the Patient Completed Therapy
Recurrence is considered the same TB episode (count only 1 episode as a case for that year; within a 12-month period, **not** calendar year).	Recurrence is considered a separate TB episode.
Do **not** count as a new case.	Count as a new case.

Note: Recurrent cases within 12 months of completion of therapy should be considered noncountable, regardless of whether the initial and the subsequent genotypes are the same or are different.

Comment: People Entering the United States

For additional information on immigrants, refugees, permanent resident aliens, border crossers and foreign visitors see Appendix B – Recommendations for Reporting and Counting Tuberculosis Cases.

Exercise
5. Count Status

Count Status (item 5) can be quite confusing, so there are 13 study questions and case studies included to help you understand this item.

5.1 What information is needed to determine the Count Status?
(circle the one best answer)

A. That it is a verified case of TB

B. Whether the case is countable (meets surveillance definition)

C. Confirmed that it is **NOT** counted by another US area

X D. A, B, and C are all correct

E. Only A and B are both correct

Case Study – Carlos

Carlos is diagnosed with TB in May 2008 after being evaluated at a free clinic for homeless persons in Springfield, Missouri. He successfully completes directly observed therapy on December 10, 2008.

In July 2009, Carlos presents to Springfield Hospital, and an astute clinician recognizes signs of TB disease. Carlos's chest radiograph is consistent with TB disease. His sputum smear is AFB-positive and he is started on anti-TB therapy. Later his culture result is positive for *M. tuberculosis* complex.

5.2 Does Carlos have a countable case for 2009 national surveillance?
(circle the one best answer)

A. **Yes**, because his recurrence of TB disease is **more than 12 months after completion of therapy**

B. **Yes**, because his recurrence of TB disease is **more than 12 months after initial diagnosis**

X C. **No**, because his recurrence of TB disease is **within 12 months of completion of therapy**

D. **No,** because his recurrence of TB disease is **more than 12 months after initial diagnosis**

Note for answer: Because his recurrence of TB disease was within 12 months of **completion of therapy** this recurrence is not considered a separate episode of TB. Initial diagnosis does not factor into this decision. A 2009 RVCT would be completed and in **Count Status** (item 5), Verified Case: Recurrent TB within 12 months would be selected.

Case Study – Carlos (continued)

Instead of having a TB recurrence diagnosed in July 2009, Carlos presents to the hospital on January 18, 2010. All clinical characteristics remain the same.

5.3 Does Carlos have a countable case for 2010 national surveillance?
(circle the one best answer)

X **A.** **Yes**, because his recurrence of TB disease is **more than 12 months after completion of therapy**

B. **Yes,** because his recurrence of TB disease is **more than 12 months after initial diagnosis**

C. **No,** because his recurrence of TB disease is **within 12 months of completion of therapy**

D. **No,** because his recurrence of TB disease is **more than 12 months after initial diagnosis**

Note for answer: It is **Yes,** because his recurrence of TB disease is **more than 12 months after completion of therapy** and is considered a new case of TB. A 2010 RVCT would be completed and for **Count Status** (item 5) count as a TB case would be selected.

Case Study for Items 3 and 5 – Raul

Raul lives in El Paso, Texas, and is diagnosed with TB disease in September 2008 and completes therapy on March 21, 2009. His Texas locally assigned identification number is 200800121. In December 2009, Raul moves to Arizona. He presents to the Tucson General Hospital with symptoms of TB on May 1, 2010, and is evaluated for TB. He is diagnosed with TB disease on May 12, 2010. His Arizona locally assigned identification number is 201000032.

5.4 What is the State Case Number for Item 3 on the 2010 RVCT?
(circle the one best answer)

A.

Year Reported (YYYY)				State Code		Locally Assigned Identification Number								
2	0	0	8	T	X	2	0	0	8	0	0	1	2	1

X **B.**

Year Reported (YYYY)				State Code		Locally Assigned Identification Number								
2	0	1	0	A	Z	2	0	1	0	0	0	0	3	2

5.5 What is the Linking State Case Number for Item 3 on the 2010 RVCT?
(circle the one best answer)

X A.

Year Reported (YYYY)				State Code		Locally Assigned Identification Number								
2	0	0	8	T	X	2	0	0	8	0	0	1	2	1

B.

Year Reported (YYYY)				State Code		Locally Assigned Identification Number								
2	0	1	0	A	Z	2	0	1	0	0	0	0	3	2

5.6 What is the Reason for the Linking State Case Number for Raul?
(circle the one best answer)

X A. Reason 1 – Recurrence or previous diagnosis of TB

B. Reason 2 – Epidemiologically linked case, source case, or contact with another case

C. Reason 3 – Case transferred from another area

5.7 How would you complete item 5, Count Status, on the 2010 RVCT?
(circle the one best answer)

X A. Count as a TB case

B. Noncountable – Verified Case: Counted by another U.S. area

C. Noncountable – Verified Case: TB treatment initiated in another country

D. Noncountable – Verified Case: Recurrent TB within 12 months after completion of therapy

Note for answer: Raul's case is counted as a new case of TB in Arizona because his recurrence of TB is more than 12 months after completion of therapy.

Case Study for Items 3 and 5 – Elton

Elton lives in Cut and Shoot, Texas, and is diagnosed with TB disease in June 2009 and immediately starts therapy. In December 2009, Elton moves to Truth or Consequences, New Mexico, and continues DOT through the County Health Department.

5.8 What is the Reason for the Linking State Case Number for Elton?
(circle the one best answer)

A. Reason 1 – Recurrence or previous diagnosis of TB

B. Reason 2 – Epidemiologically linked case, source case, or contact with another case

X C. Reason 3 – Case transferred from another area

Note for answer: Communication between TB control programs to ensure continuity of care and submission of reports regarding a patient who is moving from one area to another should be conducted as securely and efficiently as possible (e.g., telephone, e-mail, secure fax, express courier).

Case Study for Items 3, 4, and 5 – John

The Tennessee TB program confirms that John is diagnosed with TB on November 1, 2008, and he starts on DOT. Tennessee counts his case as a 2008 case. John receives only one week of anti-TB therapy while in Tennessee. He is then reported as lost.

In December 2008, John moves to Fulton County, Georgia. He goes to the Fulton County TB Clinic on February 2, 2009, complaining of a prolonged cough and fever. During the interview, John reveals that he was treated for TB in the past in Tennessee. The Fulton County TB clinic evaluates him for TB disease. He is started on anti-TB therapy. The Fulton County TB Clinic contacts the Tennessee TB program to confirm the information and to inform the Tennessee program that John is now living in Georgia. On February 16, TB disease is confirmed based on a positive culture, and he completes treatment in Georgia, in August 2009.

5.9 Which state should count the case?
(circle the one best answer)

X A. Tennessee

B. Georgia

5.10 What reporting address should be entered on the 2008 RVCT?
(circle the one best answer)

X A. John's address in Tennessee

B. John's address in Georgia

5.11 What is the Reason for the Linking State Case Number of the 2009 RVCT?
(circle the one best answer)

A. Reason 1 – Recurrence or previous diagnosis of TB

B. Reason 2 – Epidemiologically linked case, source case, or contact with another case

X C. Reason 3 – Case transferred from another area

5.12 What reporting address should be entered on the 2009 RVCT?
(circle the one best answer)

A. John's address in Tennessee

X B. John's address in Georgia

5.13 How would you complete item 5, Count Status, on the 2009 RVCT?
(circle the one best answer)

A. Count as a TB case

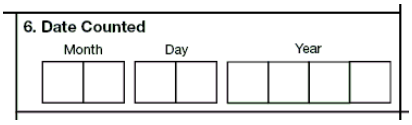
X B. Noncountable – Verified Case: Counted by another U.S. area

C. Noncountable – Verified Case: TB treatment initiated in another country

D. Noncountable – Verified Case: Recurrent TB within 12 months

Note for answer: A 2009 RVCT would be completed by Georgia listing John's count status in Item 5 as a verified case counted by another area. The 2009 form is completed by Georgia and the 2009 reporting address should reflect his 2009 Georgia address to assess level of burden of a noncountable case. However, Georgia cannot count him in its 2009 case count because he has been counted as a case in Tennessee **within 12 months**. John never completed therapy in Tennessee, so Georgia should assist John in completing therapy, and communicate with Tennessee to provide details for case close-out.

6. Date Counted



Primary Purpose: Surveillance. Data are used by the count authority to tally the official TB case count for the month, quarter, and year.

	Description	Comment
Month, day, and year (e.g., 01/17/2009)	Date that the responsible count authority (usually the state health department, but might be another designated authority) • Reviewed the RVCT • Verified the case as TB **and** • Included it in the official TB case count	If the day is unknown, enter 99 as the default value (e.g., 01/99/2009).

Summary of Date Reported, Date Submitted, and Date Counted

Type of Date	Who/What	Description of Action
Date Reported (item 1)	**TB suspect**	**Reported** to the health department (either by the health department itself or another health care provider)
Date Submitted (item 2)	**RVCT form**	**Submitted** to the reporting area (e.g., state health department)
Date Counted (item 6)	**TB case**	**Counted as a Case of TB** (by the count authority)

Comment: Pending results
Suspected cases for which bacteriologic results are pending or for which verification of disease is questioned for any reason should be counted only after they are determined to be verified TB cases. This could mean that a case reported in one year may not be counted until the following year.

Example: Date Counted
If a case is reported to the health department in December 2008, but bacteriologic or clinical evidence of TB is not available until January 2009, the case should be counted in January 2009 (when TB disease was verified), not in December.

Exercise
6. Date Counted

For questions 6.1 – 6.3
What is the description for the following items?
(Choose the one best answer by matching the description with the RVCT item. Write the letter for the description on the line next to the question number.)

	Item		Description	
C___	**6.1**	Item 1, Date Reported	**A.**	Date the reporting area sends the RVCT to the counting authority
A___	**6.2**	Item 2, Date Submitted	**B.**	Date that the count authority verifies the case as TB and it is included in the official case count
B___	**6.3**	Item 6, Date Counted	**C.**	Date that a health department first suspects that the patient might have TB

Case Study – Richard

On September 3, 2009, Richard is diagnosed with culture-positive TB. It is confirmed that he has never had TB disease before. The RVCT form is completed by the county health department on September 12 and sent to the state TB program. On September 21 the state TB program determines that it is a new verified case of TB and reports it to CDC.

6.4 Which date is the Date Counted?
(circle the one best answer)

A. September 3, 2009

B. September 12, 2009

X **C.** September 21, 2009

Note for answer: The **Date Counted** is the date that the responsible count authority verifies the case as a new case of TB and includes it in the official TB case count.

Case Study - Items 1, 2, and 6 – Reviewing the RVCT

You are reviewing an RVCT that your colleague Jim completed. You look at the following dates that were entered for Items 1, 2, and 6. You notice that there is a problem with the following dates.

Item 1 – Date Reported – May 18, 2009

Item 2 – Date Submitted – May 18, 2009

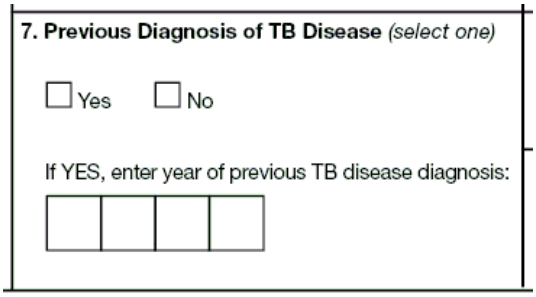
Item 6 – Date Counted – May 3, 2009

6.5 What is the problem with the dates?
(circle the one best answer)

A. The **Date Reported** cannot be the same date as the **Date Submitted** because the case cannot be submitted the same day that it was reported.

X B. The **Date Counted** cannot come before the **Date Reported** because the case has to be reported and evaluated before it can be counted.

7. Previous Diagnosis of TB Disease



Primary Purpose: Case management and surveillance. Data are used to evaluate the patient's response to treatment and to analyze drug resistance from a previous episode of TB disease.

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
Yes	Patient has received a previous diagnosis of TB disease. If you selected **Yes**, enter the **year of previous diagnosis of TB disease** (e.g., 1985).	Do not enter a previous diagnosis of latent TB infection (LTBI). If the patient had more than 1 previous episode of TB disease, enter the year of the **most recent** previous episode.
No	Patient has **not** received a previous diagnosis of **TB disease.**	

Comments: Yes

A patient is considered to have had a previous diagnosis of TB disease if

- TB disease was verified in the past
  or
- The patient completed therapy for TB disease (even if the case-to-case interval is within 12 months)
  or
- The patient with TB disease was lost to supervision for more than 12 months and now has verified TB disease again.

Note: Recurrent cases within 12 months of completion of therapy should be considered noncountable, regardless of whether the initial and the subsequent genotypes are the same or are different.

If the patient had a previous episode of TB that was reported to U.S. surveillance, you should, for the purposes of linking RVCT forms

- Contact the state in which the case was counted to ask for the most recent previous diagnosis
- Enter the most recent previous RVCT **State Case Number** for this case under **Linking State Case Number** (item 3)
- Enter the code for the **Reason** linking is desired (e.g., enter 1 for recurrence or previous diagnosis of TB)

Documentation of Previous Diagnosis of TB Disease

Often, TB disease is confused with latent TB infection (LTBI), which should not be coded as previous TB disease. Therefore, documentation of the previous episode of TB disease is important. Follow the priority indicated below.

1st Priority
Written Documentation
If written documentation is not available use the 2nd priority

Written Documentation
Written documentation of the previous episode of TB disease is ideal. However, if the TB disease episode occurred years ago or in another location (e.g., other country), obtaining written documentation may be difficult.

2nd Priority
Oral Report

Oral Report
When written documentation is **not** available, oral report of a previous episode of TB disease is acceptable (e.g., medications taken, length of course of medication, results of sputum smear examination).

Exercise
7. Previous Diagnosis of TB Disease

Case Study – David

In January 2009, David has a positive tuberculin skin test (TST) result. His sputum result is smear negative, with a normal chest radiograph, and he is treated for latent TB infection (LTBI). He completes treatment July 15, 2009. He goes to Cape Town, South Africa, for international training and returns home August 15, 2009. Four months later David becomes severely ill and on December 17, 2009, his chest radiographs are abnormal and consistent with TB. At that time, a sputum sample is sent to the laboratory. His sputum results indicate both smear and culture positive for *M. tuberculosis* complex.

7.1 Is David considered to have a Previous Diagnosis of TB Disease?
(circle the one best answer)

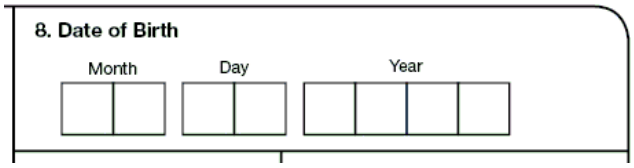
A. Yes, because he had a positive TST

B. Yes, because he was treated for LTBI

X C. No, because he had LTBI and not TB disease

Note for answer: David is **not** considered to have a **Previous Diagnosis of TB Disease** because in January 2009 he had LTBI and not TB disease**.**

8. Date of Birth



Primary Purpose: Surveillance. Data are used to document patient demographic information.

	Description	Comment
Month, day, and year (e.g., 04/26/1968)	Patient's complete date of birth should be entered (i.e., values should be entered for month, day, and year).	Some societies or cultures throughout the world do not document the day, month, or even the year of birth. If the day is unknown, or the month and the day are unknown, enter 99 as the default value (e.g., 04/99/1968 or 99/99/1968). If the month, day, and year of birth are unknown, enter 99/99/9999.

Exercise
8. Date of Birth

Case Study – Edris

Your patient Edris is from Iran. When you ask him for his date of birth, he says that he is born in 1947, but he has never seen his birth certificate and his parents could not remember when he was born, so he isn't sure of the month and day. He also mentions that he sometimes uses March 21, 1947, as his birth date and sometimes February 23 as the date.

8.1 What would be entered for Edris' date of birth?
(circle the one best answer)

A.

Month		Day		Year			
0	3	2	1	1	9	4	7

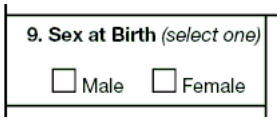
B.

Month		Day		Year			
0	2	2	3	1	9	4	7

X C.

Month		Day		Year			
9	9	9	9	1	9	4	7

9. Sex at Birth



Primary Purpose: Surveillance. Data are used to document patient demographic information.

Option *(select one)*	Description
Male	The biological sex of the TB patient was **Male** at birth.
Female	The biological sex of the TB patient was **Female** at birth.

Exercise
9. Sex at Birth

Case Study – Dahlia

You are meeting with Dahlia and filling out the RVCT form. You ask Dahlia what was her sex at birth. Dahlia insists that she is a woman. You are suspicious because Dahlia looks and dresses like a woman, but she has a very deep voice, large hands and feet, and there appears to be some facial hair. While showing respect for Dahlia and the sensitivity of the situation, you stress confidentiality and mention that this form is for surveillance purposes only. You ask her what sex is listed on her birth certificate. Dahlia mentions that it is male, but she had an operation that brought out her feminine side.

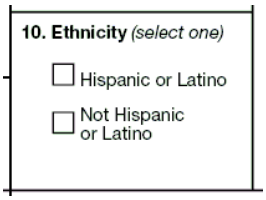
9.1 What do you list as Dahlia's sex at birth?
(circle the one best answer)

X **A.** Male

B. Female

Note for the answer: Health care workers are dependent on the answers that the patients provide, regardless of how the health care worker thinks the items should be answered. However, asking the patient probing questions and reviewing the patient's medical records and other documentation can provide the most accurate answers for biological sex at birth.

10. Ethnicity



Primary Purpose: Surveillance. Data are used to detect high-risk groups for TB by ethnicity.

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
Hispanic or Latino	Patient considers himself or herself Cuban, Mexican, Puerto Rican, South or Central American, or of other Spanish culture or origin, regardless of race.	Some patients prefer the term "Spanish origin" to **Hispanic** or **Latino.**
Not Hispanic or Latino	Patient does **not** consider himself or herself **Hispanic or Latino.**	

Comment: Self-identity or self-reporting
The response to this item should be based on the patient's self-identity or self-reporting. It should **not** be based on appearance or surname.

Example: Not Hispanic or Latino but has a Hispanic name
A patient may have a Hispanic name, but may not be Hispanic or Latino. For example, if a woman who is not Hispanic marries a Hispanic man, she may self-report as "Not Hispanic or Latino." Similarly, people from the Philippines may have Hispanic names, but self-report as "Not Hispanic."

Exercise
10. Ethnicity

Case Study – Susy

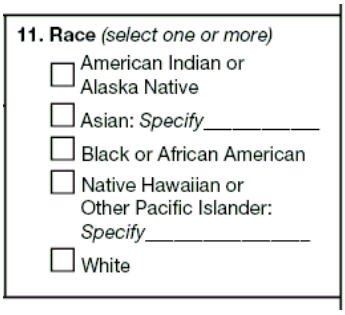
Susy is a school teacher. She went to the Houston, Texas, Health Department for TB testing because of an outbreak at her school. She was diagnosed with TB disease. You ask her ethnicity and she says multi-racial because her father is an American Indian from Arizona and her mother is Cuban. You explain the difference between race and ethnicity and you ask her if she considers herself Hispanic or Latino, or **not** Hispanic or Latino. Susy says that she is part Hispanic.

10.1 What do you check for Item 10 Ethnicity?
(circle the one best answer)

X **A.** Hispanic or Latino

B. Not Hispanic or Latino

11. Race



Primary Purpose: Surveillance. Data are used to detect high-risk groups for TB by race.

Option *(select one or more)*	Description
American Indian or Alaska Native	Patient has origins in **any** of the original peoples of North and South America (including Central America).
Asian	Patient has origins in **any** of the original peoples of the Far East, Southeast Asia, or the Indian subcontinent (e.g., including Bangladesh, Cambodia, China, India, Indonesia, Japan, Korea, Malaysia, Nepal, Pakistan, the Philippine Islands, Thailand, and Vietnam).
Black or African American	Patient has origins in **any** of the black racial groups of Africa.
Native Hawaiian or Other Pacific Islander	Patient has origins in **any** of the original peoples of Hawaii, Guam, American Samoa, or other Pacific Islands.
White	Patient has origins in **any** of the original peoples of Europe, the Middle East, or North Africa.

Comment: Self-identity or self-reporting
The response to this item should be based on the patient's self-identity or self-reporting. Therefore, patients should be offered the option of selecting more than one racial designation.

Comment: Asian or Native Hawaiian or Other Pacific Islander
If you selected **Asian** or **Native Hawaiian or Other Pacific Islander**, use the National Electronic Disease Surveillance System (NEDSS) Person Race Categories to complete **Specify**. The chart below indicates who is considered Asian and who is considered Native Hawaiian or Other Pacific Islander.

National Electronic Disease Surveillance System (NEDSS)
Person Race Categories for Asian and for
Native Hawaiian or Other Pacific Islander*

Asian		Native Hawaiian or Other Pacific Islander	
Asian Indian	Laotian	Carolinian	New Hebrides
Bangladeshi	Madagascar	Chamorro	Other Pacific Islander
Bhutanese	Malaysian	Chuukese	Palauan
Burmese	Maldivian	Fijian	Papua New Guinean
Cambodian	Nepalese	Guamanian	Pohnpeian
Chinese	Okinawan	Kiribati	Polynesian
Filipino	Pakistani	Kosraean	Saipanese
Hmong	Singaporean	Mariana Islander	Samoan
Indonesian	Sri Lankan	Marshallese	Solomon Islander
Iwo Jiman	Taiwanese	Melanesian	Tahitian
Japanese	Thai	Micronesian	Tokelauan
Korean	Vietnamese	Native Hawaiian	Tongan
			Yapese

*From NEDSS Logical Data Model Data Dictionary: Appendix B, 1. Standardized Vocabulary, 1.4 Person Race Categories and Codes (http://www.cdc.gov/nedss/DataModels/NEDSS_LDM_Dictionary_II.pdf; last updated 11-19-2001)

Exercise
11. Race

Case Study – Joaquin

You ask Joaquin how he defines his race. You state that there are several options for race and he can select whatever he thinks is appropriate. Joaquin says his father is African American and his mother is full-blooded Cherokee Indian, so he thinks he is both of those races.

11.1 Which of the following do you check for Item 11 Race?
(circle the one best answer)

A. American Indian or Alaska Native

B. Asian

C. Black or African American

D. Native Hawaiian or Other Pacific Islander

X E. Both A and C

Note for answer: Joaquin says his mother is American Indian and his father is African American, so the answer is E because both A and C are correct.

Case Study – Trang

The health care worker asks Trang what race she is. She states that she is Filipino and Vietnamese.

11.2 Which of the following do you check for Item 11 Race?
(circle the one best answer)

A. American Indian or Alaska Native

X B. Asian

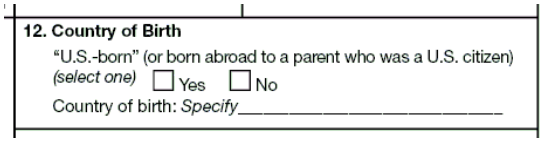
C. Black or African American

D. Native Hawaiian or Other Pacific Islander

E. Both A and C

Note for answer: Trang is Filipino and Vietnamese, which are both considered Asian race. Even though the Philippines are islands in the Pacific, Filipinos are considered an Asian race.

12. Country of Birth


12. Country of Birth
"U.S.-born" (or born abroad to a parent who was a U.S. citizen)
(select one) ☐ Yes ☐ No
Country of birth: Specify_____

Primary Purpose: Surveillance. Data are used to determine the rate of TB among "U.S.-born" and foreign-born persons and to identify persons from countries with a high rate of TB.

Note: This portion of the RVCT asks 2 questions to help classify a person based on where the person was born.

- **"U.S.-born."** The U.S. Census Bureau defines a "U.S.-born" person to be someone born in 1 of the 50 states or the District of Columbia, or someone born outside the United States to at least one parent who was a U.S. citizen. In order to be consistent with the U.S. Census Bureau and to be able to apply census bureau population data to calculate TB rates, CDC uses the same definition for "U.S.-born."

- **Country of birth.** In order to distinguish persons who were born in another country (whether or not they had a parent who was a U.S. citizen) from those who were born in the United States, this question simply asks to record the actual country of birth. Therefore, a patient who was born in France and whose father was a U.S. citizen would be "U.S.-born" and their country of birth would be France.

"U.S.-born" (or born abroad to a parent who was a U.S. citizen)

OPTION *(select one)*	Description	Comment
Yes	If the person was born • In 1 of the 50 U.S. states or the District of Columbia, **or** • Abroad to a parent who was a U.S. citizen.	"U.S.-born" does **not** mean the same as U.S. citizen, and it does not necessarily mean that the person was born in the United States. **Not** all U.S. citizens (e.g., naturalized citizens) are "U.S.-born."
No	If the person was born • Abroad **and** • Neither parent was a U.S. citizen.	Select for any country other than the United States.

Country of birth

	Description
Country of birth (specify) (e.g., United States, Mexico, China)	Enter the name of the country in which the person was actually born. Fill this out for all patients (whether they were "U.S.-born" or not).

Examples of U.S.-Born

Patient			Father		Mother	
U.S.-born		Description	U.S. citizen		U.S. citizen	
Yes	No		Yes	No	Yes	No
Yes		Born in 1 of the 50 states or the District of Columbia	**Yes**		**Yes**	
Yes		Born in 1 of the 50 states or the District of Columbia		**No**		**No**
Yes		Born in another country	**Yes**		**Yes**	
Yes		Born in another country	**Yes**			**No**
Yes		Born in another country		**No**	**Yes**	
	No	Born in another country		**No**		**No**

Note: People born in Puerto Rico, Guam, the U.S. Virgin Islands, or the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands are U.S. citizens, but are **only considered "U.S.-born"** if they are born to a parent who is a U.S. citizen.

Comment: "U.S.-born"
If the patient was born in 1 of the 50 states or the District of Columbia, or born abroad to a parent who was a U.S. citizen (either the mother or father or both parents), the patient is considered "U.S.-born." Select Yes for "U.S.-born." For country of birth, enter the name of the country where the person was actually born.

Example: "U.S.-born" and actually born in 1 of the 50 states or the District of Columbia
If the person was actually born in 1 of the 50 states or the District of Columbia, enter

- "U.S.-born" – Yes
- Country of birth – United States

Example: "U.S.-born" and actually born in another country
If the patient is born in Haiti, his mother is Haitian, but his father is a U.S. citizen, enter

- "U.S.-born" – Yes
- Country of birth – Haiti

Example: "U.S.-born" and born to parents who were born in Puerto Rico, Guam, the U.S. Virgin Islands, or the Commonwealth of the Mariana Islands (people born in these countries are U.S. citizens)
If the patient was born in Puerto Rico and both parents were born in Puerto Rico (therefore U.S. citizens), enter

- "U.S.-born" – Yes
- Country of birth – Puerto Rico

Comment: Not "U.S.-born" and born in any country other than the U.S.
If the patient was born in a country other than the United States to parents who were **not** "U.S. citizens," enter

- "U.S.-born" – No
- Country of birth – name of the country where the person was actually born

Example: Not "U.S.-born" but born in Puerto Rico, Guam, the U.S. Virgin Islands, or the Commonwealth of the Mariana Islands (people born in these countries are U.S. citizens but not necessarily U.S.-born)
If the patient was born in Puerto Rico and but neither parent was a U.S. citizen, enter

- "U.S.-born" - No
- Country of birth – Puerto Rico

Example: Not "U.S.-born" and born to parents who are not U.S. citizens
If the patient was born in Russia and both parents are Russian citizens, enter

- "U.S.-born" - No
- Country of birth – Russia

Exercise
12. Country of Birth

Case Study – Wolfgang

You are completing an RVCT on Wolfgang and you ask him his country of birth. He says he was born in Germany. His father was born in the United States and is a U.S. citizen. His mother is a German citizen. They married when his father was stationed in Germany.

12.1 What do you specify for "U.S.-born"?
(circle the one best answer)

X A. Yes

B. No

Note for answer: When a patient was born abroad to a parent who is a U.S. citizen, the patient is considered "U.S.-born."

12.2 What do you specify for Country of Birth?
(circle the one best answer)

A. United States

X B. Germany

Note for answer: Because Wolfgang was actually born in Germany, the correct answer is Germany.

Case Study – Bernard

Bernard was born in Tryon, North Carolina. Both of his parents were born in Hungary.

12.3 What do you specify for "U.S.-born"?
(circle the one best answer)

X A. Yes

B. No

Note for answer: Bernard is considered "U.S.-born" because he was born in 1 of the 50 states or the District of Columbia. Even though both of his parents were born in a foreign country, he is still considered "U.S.-born."

12.4 What do you specify for Country of Birth?
(circle the one best answer)

X A. United States

B. Hungary

Note for answer: Bernard was born in the United States, so the answer would be United States.

Case Study – Mayleen

Mayleen was born in Guam. Both of her parents were born in Palau. They had moved to Guam for one year during the time when Mayleen was born.

12.5 What do you specify for "U.S.-born"?
(circle the one best answer)

A. Yes

X B. No

Note for answer: Mayleen is not considered "U.S.-born" because she was not born in 1 of the 50 states or the District of Columbia and neither of her parents were U.S. citizens. Mayleen is a U.S. citizen but not U.S.-born. Her parents are citizens of Palau. However, if they had been born in Guam they would be considered U.S. citizens and Mayleen would be considered "U.S.-born."

12.6 What do you specify for Country of Birth?
(circle the one best answer)

A. Palau

X B. Guam

C. United States

Note for answer: Mayleen was born in Guam, so the answer would be Guam.

Case Study – Jiguna

Jiguna was born in Kenya. Both his mother and father were Kenyan citizens. The family moved to the United States when Jiguna was 2 months old.

12.7 What do you specify for "U.S.-born"?
(circle the one best answer)

A. Yes

X B. No

Note for answer: Jiguna was born abroad to parents who were **not** U.S. citizens. Therefore he is not considered "U.S.-born."

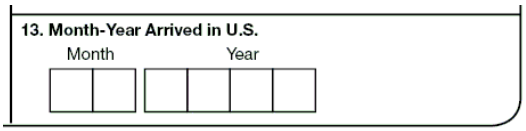
12.8 What do you specify for Country of Birth?
(circle the one best answer)

A. United States

X B. Kenya

Note for answer: Because Jiguna was born in Kenya, the correct answer is Kenya.

13. Month-Year Arrived in U.S.



Primary Purpose: Programmatic function. Data are used to guide TB programs in developing strategies for TB prevention and control for persons born outside the U.S.

	Description	Comment
Month and year (e.g., 02/1975)	When the patient **first** arrived in the United States (1 of the 50 states or the District of Columbia).	Complete this item if the patient was born in another country. If month is unknown, enter 99 as the default value (e.g., 99/1975). If neither month nor year is known, enter 99/9999.
Leave item blank	If patient was born in 1 of the 50 states or the District of Columbia.	

Comment: If the patient was born abroad to a parent who was a U.S. citizen
If a patient was born abroad to a parent who was a U.S. citizen, enter the month and year that the patient first arrived in the United States (1 of the 50 states or the District of Columbia).

Example: If the patient was born abroad to a parent who was a U.S. citizen
If a patient was born in Germany to a parent who was a U.S. citizen, enter the month and year that the patient first arrived in the United States (1 of the 50 states or the District of Columbia).

Example: If the patient was born abroad to a parent who was a U.S. citizen
If a patient was born in Puerto Rico to a parent who was a U.S. citizen, enter the month and year that the patient first arrived in the United States (1 of the 50 states or the District of Columbia).

Example: Date that a patient first arrived from another country who enters on student visa
If a patient is a citizen from another country and comes to the United States (1 of the 50 states or the District of Columbia) on a student visa and returns home, and then later returns to the United States, the date when the patient first arrived in the United States as a student would be the date that should be entered, even if the patient doesn't return for many years.

Exercise
13. Month-Year Arrived in U.S.

Case Study – Julia

Julia is a citizen of El Salvador. In January 2008 she came to the U.S. on a student visa. In June 2009 she returned home to El Salvador. In September 2010 she returned to the United States on another student visa.

13.1 What is the month and year that Julia arrived in the United States?
(circle the one best answer)

X A.

Month		Year			
0	1	2	0	0	8

B.

Month		Year			
0	9	2	0	1	0

Note for answer: When a patient is born abroad, the date arrived in the U.S. should be when the patient entered the U.S. for the first time.

Case Study – Ken

Ken was born March 16, 2000, in Majuro, Republic of the Marshall Islands (RMI). His mother is a U.S. citizen and his father is a citizen of the RMI. On December 20, 2009, he migrated with his family to Arkansas. He is diagnosed with TB on March 5, 2010.

13.2 What do you enter for Ken for Month-Year Arrived in the U.S.?
(circle the one best answer)

A.

Month		Year			
0	3	2	0	0	0

X B.

Month		Year			
1	2	2	0	0	9

C.

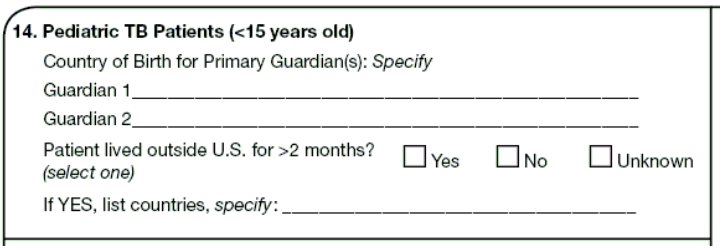
Month		Year			
0	3	2	0	1	0

D.

Month		Year				
						(Leave answer blank)

Note for answer: The answer is B. For patients born in another country, enter month and year first arrived in the U.S. Ken was born in the Republic of the Marshall Islands and moved to Arkansas. Even though his mother is a U.S. citizen and Ken is "U.S.-born," the item is asking when the patient first arrived in the U.S.

14. Pediatric TB Patients (<15 years old)


14. Pediatric TB Patients (<15 years old)
Country of Birth for Primary Guardian(s): *Specify*
Guardian 1_____
Guardian 2_____
Patient lived outside U.S. for >2 months? *(select one)* ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ Unknown
If YES, list countries, *specify*: _____

Primary Purpose: Surveillance. Data are used to capture risk factors for guardians born in countries that have a high burden of TB and when pediatric patients live in TB endemic countries.

To better capture important information about pediatric TB patients (<15 years old), this variable provides information on country of birth for primary guardians (or primary care givers) of the pediatric patient and whether the patient lived outside the United States (1 of the 50 states or the District of Columbia) for an **uninterrupted** period of more than 2 months.

Note: Pediatric TB Patients (item 14) should be completed for all pediatric patients. For all pediatric patients, ask the country of birth for parents or primary guardians and whether the patient has lived outside the United States for >2 months consecutively.

Complete this item for **all pediatric** TB patients (<15 years old).

	Description
Country of birth for the primary guardians (e.g., mother, father, adoptive or foster parent, grandparent)	Enter the names of the countries where the primary guardians were actually born. Enter as many as 2 parents or primary guardians.

Complete this item for **all pediatric** TB patients (<15 years old).

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
Yes	Pediatric patient lived outside the United States (1 of the 50 states or the District of Columbia) for an **uninterrupted** period of more than 2 months.	Although it may be difficult to determine the exact amount of uninterrupted time that a patient lived outside the United States, check **Yes** and enter the names of the countries if the period is believed to be more than 8 consecutive weeks (2 months).
No	Pediatric patient did **not** live outside the United States for an **uninterrupted** period of more than 2 months.	

Unknown	It is **not** known whether the pediatric patient lived outside the United States for an **uninterrupted** period of **more than 2 months.**	

Comment: Lived outside the United States
Lived outside the United States refers to the place where a person stayed or slept most of the time, or the place the person considered home during the stated period.

If you selected **Yes**, enter the following information.

	Description	Comment
Countries *(specify)*	Enter the names of the countries where the pediatric patient lived.	Enter **as many as 3 non-U.S. countries** in which the patient most recently lived for a total of **more than 2 uninterrupted months**.

Example: Yes, Lived outside the United States in as many as 3 countries for a total of more than 2 uninterrupted months
From January 1 to March 15, the patient lived outside the United States
- Lived in Zambia for 10 weeks, then
- Returned to the United States

Example: Yes, Lived outside the United States in as many as 3 countries for a total of more than 2 uninterrupted months
From January 1 to March 15 the patient lived outside the United States
- Lived in Zambia for 4 weeks, then
- Lived in South Africa for 3 weeks, then
- Lived in Botswana 3 weeks, then
- Returned to the United States

Example: No, Lived outside the United States in as many as 3 countries for a total of more than 2 months, but travel was interrupted
From January 1 – March 15 the patient lived outside the United States
- Lived in Zambia for 5 weeks, then
- Returned to the United States for 2 weeks, then
- Lived in South Africa for 5 weeks, then
- Returned to the United States

Exercise
14. Pediatric TB Patients (<15 years old)

Case Study – Pim

Pim, a pediatric TB patient, was born in Portland, Oregon, on March 6, 2000. Her father was born in Thailand and immigrated to the U.S. in 1998. Her mother was born in Burlington, Vermont. The family traveled to Thailand for 3 weeks in 2005, but have not been out of the U.S. since that time. Pim's parents were divorced in 2006 and her mother remarried in 2008. Pim lives with her mother and stepfather who was also born in Vermont. Her father and mother share joint custody, and Pim stays with her father every other weekend.

14.1 What would you enter for Country of Birth for the primary guardians?
(circle the one best answer)

X **A.** Guardian 1 - United States (based on mother)
Guardian 2 - Thailand (based on father)

B. Guardian 1 - United States (based on mother)
Guardian 2 - United States (based on stepfather)

Note for answer: Although Pim's parents are divorced, in this case it is probably best to enter her mother's and father's countries of birth. The guardians are usually the parents. There are only 2 lines, so it is not possible to indicate 3 people. In another situation, it might be better to list the stepfather; it just depends on the situation. **It is important to identify not only the guardian who has the most contact with the child, but also the guardian who may have a possible risk of TB exposure.** In this case, Pim's father would be a higher priority than the stepfather because he still has regular and frequent contact with her, and he also has a risk factor because he immigrated from Thailand. If the biological father was not at risk of TB and everything else was equal with the stepfather, then the stepfather would probably be listed as the guardian. It just depends on how the state TB program views guardianship and factors that put the patient at greatest risk for TB.

14.2 What do you specify for Patient lived outside the U.S. for >2 months?
(circle the one best answer)

A. Yes

X **B.** No

C. Unknown

Case Study for Items 12 and 14 – Antonio

Antonio, a pediatric patient, was born in El Salvador. His father was born in the United States and living in El Salvador when Antonio was born. His mother was born in El Salvador and was a citizen of El Salvador. Antonio's mother died shortly after his birth, and Antonio was raised mostly by his father.

In January 2003, 8-year-old Antonio moved from El Salvador to Houston, Texas, when his father could no longer care for him. At that time, his uncle and aunt, the Trujillos, became his legal guardians and he has lived with them since that time. Both his uncle and aunt were born in El Salvador, but have been living in the United States for over 30 years.

14.3 For Item 12, what do you select for "U.S.-born"?
(circle the one best answer)

X **A.** Yes

B. No

Note for answer: Antonio is "U.S.-born" because his father was born in the United States and is a U.S. citizen.

14.4 For Item 12, what is the Country of Birth for Antonio?
(circle the one best answer)

X **A.** El Salvador

B. United States

Note for answer: The answer is El Salvador because Antonio was actually born in El Salvador.

14.5 For Item 14, what is the Country of Birth for the primary guardians at time of diagnosis for TB?
(circle the one best answer)

A. Guardian 1 – US (based on father)
Guardian 2 – El Salvador (based on his uncle and/or aunt)

X **B.** Guardian 1 – El Salvador (based on uncle)
Guardian 2 – El Salvador (based on aunt)

Note for answer: The answer might depend on how the state TB program views guardianship. Antonio's legal guardians are his uncle and aunt, the Trujillos, both born in El Salvador. His birth parents' birth countries are El Salvador (mother) and the United States (father). Following are 3 options for how this item could be answered (depending on the state rules regarding parental care):

- If the TB program decided that Antonio still has contact with his father, the relevant primary guardians might be from El Salvador (Trujillos) and the United States (father).
- If the TB program decided that Antonio is primarily cared for by the Trujillos, the relevant primary guardians might be from El Salvador (Trujillos).
- If the TB program routinely captures data on the country of birth of the pediatric patients' mother and father, the relevant answer might be El Salvador (mother) and United States (father).

Case Study for Item 14 – Antonio (cont.)

In 2007, Antonio visited his father in El Salvador during June 5 – September 30. He returned to the United States on October 1.

14.6 For Item 14, did Antonio live outside the U.S. for >2 months?
(circle the one best answer)

X **A.** Yes

B. No

C. Unknown

Note for answer: Since Antonio was out of the United States for an uninterrupted period of more than 2 months, select Yes.

Case Study – Regina

Regina, a pediatric TB patient, visited her grandmother in Russia during April 7 – June 1, 2008. She returned to the United States on June 1.

14.7 For Item 14, did Regina live outside the U.S. for >2 months?
(circle the one best answer)

A. Yes

X **B.** No

C. Unknown

Note for answer: Answer No because Regina was out of the United States for an uninterrupted period less than 2 months.

Case Study – Lisa

Lisa, a pediatric TB patient, traveled with her parents to the Philippines September 1 – November 1, 2009. They traveled to Taiwan and visited her grandmother November 1 – November 15. Then they traveled to Vietnam November 15 – December 15. Lisa and her parents returned to the United States on December 16.

14.8 For Item 14, did Lisa live outside the U.S. for >2 months?
(circle the one best answer)

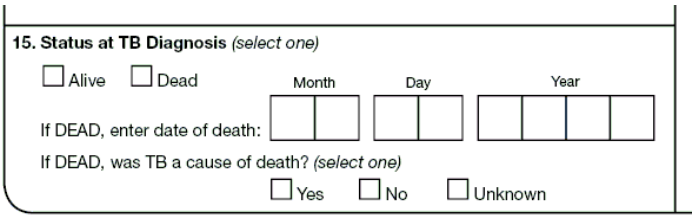
X **A.** Yes

B. No

C. Unknown

Note for answer: Answer Yes because Lisa was out of the United States for more than 2 months uninterrupted.

15. Status at TB Diagnosis



Primary Purpose: Surveillance. Data are used to examine mortality and to determine if TB was a cause of death.

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
Alive	Patient was alive at time • Laboratory results confirming a TB diagnosis (e.g., positive culture or nucleic acid amplification [NAA] test result consistent with TB) were known to the provider **or** • TB medications were started	If the patient • Was known to be culture or NAA test result positive consistent with TB prior to the date of death but did not start TB therapy per ATS/CDC/IDSA guidelines, classify the patient as alive at TB diagnosis • Started empiric therapy for TB disease (per ATS/CDC/IDSA guidelines), but TB was not verified until after the patient's death, classify as alive at TB diagnosis • Started TB therapy, regardless of laboratory or clinical confirmation for TB diagnosis, classify the patient as alive at TB diagnosis
Dead	Patient was deceased at the time laboratory results confirming a TB diagnosis (e.g., positive culture or NAA test result consistent with TB) were known to the provider	• If diagnostic specimens were collected for evaluation of TB prior to death, but positive results to make a diagnosis of TB were not available until after death, and patient did not start TB therapy, classify as dead at TB diagnosis • If TB diagnosis was made after death based on a constellation of clinical and other findings (e.g., symptoms, TST, and imaging studies) in the absence of laboratory confirmation, and the patient did not start therapy, classify as dead at TB diagnosis • If patient was receiving treatment for latent TB infection at death because active TB disease was not suspected, and TB was diagnosed after death, classify as dead at TB diagnosis • If patient was diagnosed at autopsy, classify as dead at TB diagnosis

Comment:
If a person dies while taking isoniazid as preventive therapy for latent TB infection, and this person is found after death to have had TB disease, he/she should be classified as **Dead** at TB diagnosis.

If you selected **Dead** at TB diagnosis, enter **date of death**.

	Description	Comment
Date of death (e.g., 01/17/2005)	Month, day, and year patient died	If day is unknown, enter 99 as the default value (e.g., 01/99/2005).

If you selected **Dead** at TB diagnosis, **was TB a cause of death**?

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
Yes (related to TB disease)	**TB was** • The immediate cause **or** • An underlying cause **or** • Another significant condition contributing to death (even if TB was **not** the main cause of death)	Written documentation of the cause of death (e.g., death certificate, autopsy report, medical record) is recommended. However, oral information from a reliable source (e.g., a health care provider) will be accepted. A death certificate is **not** necessarily required to complete this field. In some cases deaths may be certified before receipt of results of • Positive *M. tuberculosis* culture **or** • Other findings consistent with TB If the patient died as a result of a surgical procedure that was indicated for TB, or TB complicated a surgical procedure **not** related to TB.
No (unrelated to TB disease)	**TB was not** • The immediate cause **or** • An underlying cause **or** • Another significant condition contributing to death	
Unknown	Cause of death is **not** known.	Every effort should be made to determine if death was related to TB disease before classifying as unknown.

Note: This should reflect current or active TB disease (not LTBI) whenever death certificate or death documentation is used.

Exercise
15. Status at TB Diagnosis

Case Study – Thomas

Thomas is admitted to the hospital on August 5, 2009. He is coughing up blood. He reports having symptoms consistent with TB for the past 7 months and his chest radiograph shows significant deterioration of both lung lobes. He is placed in a TB isolation unit and begins isoniazid, ethambutol, rifampin, and pyrazinamide. He dies 1 week later on August 12, 2009.

15.1 What is the Status at TB Diagnosis?
(circle the one best answer)

X **A.** Alive

B. Dead

Case Study – Ruth

Ruth comes to the emergency room on April 30, 2009. She is diagnosed with pneumonia, given antibiotics, and discharged. She dies 2 weeks later on May 15, 2009. At autopsy, the pathology shows granulomatous changes consistent with TB disease. A lung biopsy culture is found to be positive for *M. tuberculosis* complex.

15.2 What is the Status at TB Diagnosis?
(circle the one best answer)

A. Alive

X **B.** Dead

Note for answer: Ruth's status is dead at diagnosis. Even though she clearly had TB when she came to the emergency room, TB was not suspected until after her death when the autopsy was performed.

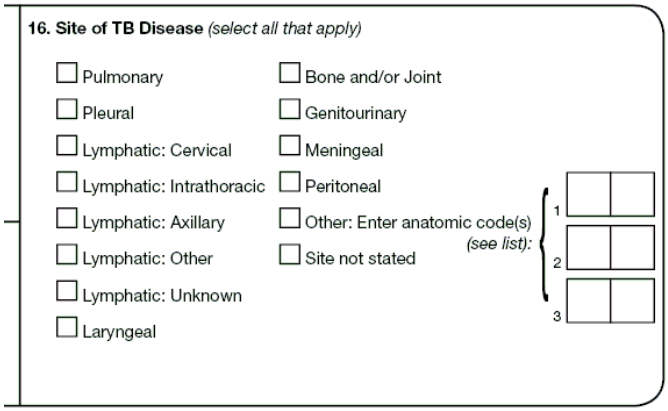
15.3 Was TB a cause of death for Ruth?
(circle the one best answer)

X **A.** Yes

B. No

Note for answer: Yes, TB was a cause of death. Regardless of whether pneumonia was misdiagnosed or was the immediate cause of death, TB was an **underlying cause of death** based on the autopsy. Ruth has a verified case of TB based on positive pathology results on lung tissue, which would be recorded in **Smear/Pathology/Cytology of Tissue and Other Body Fluids** (item 19).

16. Site of TB Disease



Primary Purpose: Surveillance. Data are used to document site of TB disease.

Option *(select all that apply)*	Description	Comment
Pulmonary, pleural, lymphatic, etc.	Select boxes corresponding to the site(s) of TB disease.	
Other: enter anatomic code(s)	If site of TB disease is **a site other than those listed**, enter the anatomic code(s) (see Appendix C – Anatomic Codes). You may enter as many as 3 **Other** anatomic codes.	Refer to the listings for site of TB disease and anatomic codes. In Appendix C – Anatomic Codes, anatomic codes for **Other** are marked with an asterisk (*). Select **only** from sites marked with an asterisk (*). Anatomic codes without an asterisk are parts of organ systems corresponding to **Site of TB Disease**.
Site not stated		If you selected Site not stated, do **not** check any other box.

Note: For the purposes of the RVCT training materials, use the codes listed in the appendices. Some software programs used to enter data on the RVCT may **NOT** use the codes listed in the appendices. For example, the Anatomic Codes may be a drop-down item where you choose the actual site rather than enter a code. For more information, see instructions for the software you use.

Comment: If more than 1 organ or disease site is involved
If there is evidence that more than 1 organ or disease site is involved, check all involved sites of disease.

Comment: Lymphatic intrathoracic
Lymphatic intrathoracic includes hilar, bronchial, mediastinal, peritracheal, and other lymph nodes within the thorax.

Comment: Miliary TB
Unlike the previous RVCT form, the new form has no place to select miliary TB in **Site of Disease** (item 16). If the report of the initial chest radiograph or the initial chest CT scan indicates "miliary TB or a miliary or bilateral micronodular pattern," record this finding under **Initial Chest Radiograph** (item 22A) or **Initial Chest CT Scan or Other Chest Imaging Study** (item 22B), respectively. However, pulmonary should be selected as **Site of Disease** (item 16) if the chest x-ray or CT scan shows evidence of nodules consistent with miliary TB.

Miliary TB is a serious type of tuberculosis infection. It is a clinical or radiologic finding, rather than a site of disease. Miliary TB is the result of a TB lung infection eroding into the bloodstream and from there disseminating throughout the body to multiple organs. It appears on radiograph as a great number of small (1- to 2-mm), well-defined nodules that look like millet seeds scattered throughout the lungs, hence the name "miliary."

Exercise
16. Site of TB Disease

Case Study – June

June is 65 years old and has been diagnosed with TB disease. Her chest x-ray shows a right pleural effusion, a right upper lobe infiltrate, and enlargement of the right intrathoracic lymph nodes. The pleural biopsy showed granulomas that were AFB positive and the sputum culture grew *M. tuberculosis* complex.

16.1 What is (are) the Site(s) of TB Disease?
(circle the one best answer)

A. Pulmonary

B. Pleural

C. Lymphatic intrathoracic

D. Peritoneal

X E. A, B, and C are all correct

Note for answer: TB disease is found in the pulmonary, pleural, and lymphatic intrathoracic sites, so all three sites should be selected. This item is usually completed by an MD consultant.

Case Study – Leonard

Leonard is a 47-year-old HIV-positive male with a 3-month history of progressive fatigue and shortness of breath. His doctor diagnosed severe anemia, and a bone marrow biopsy showed extensive granulomatous inflammation teeming with AFB. Culture of blood and bone marrow grew *M. tuberculosis* complex. His chest x-ray and chest CT scan were normal.

16.2 What is (are) the Site(s) of TB Disease?
(circle the one best answer)

A. Bone and/or joint

B. Other, anatomic code 04

C. Other, anatomic code 06

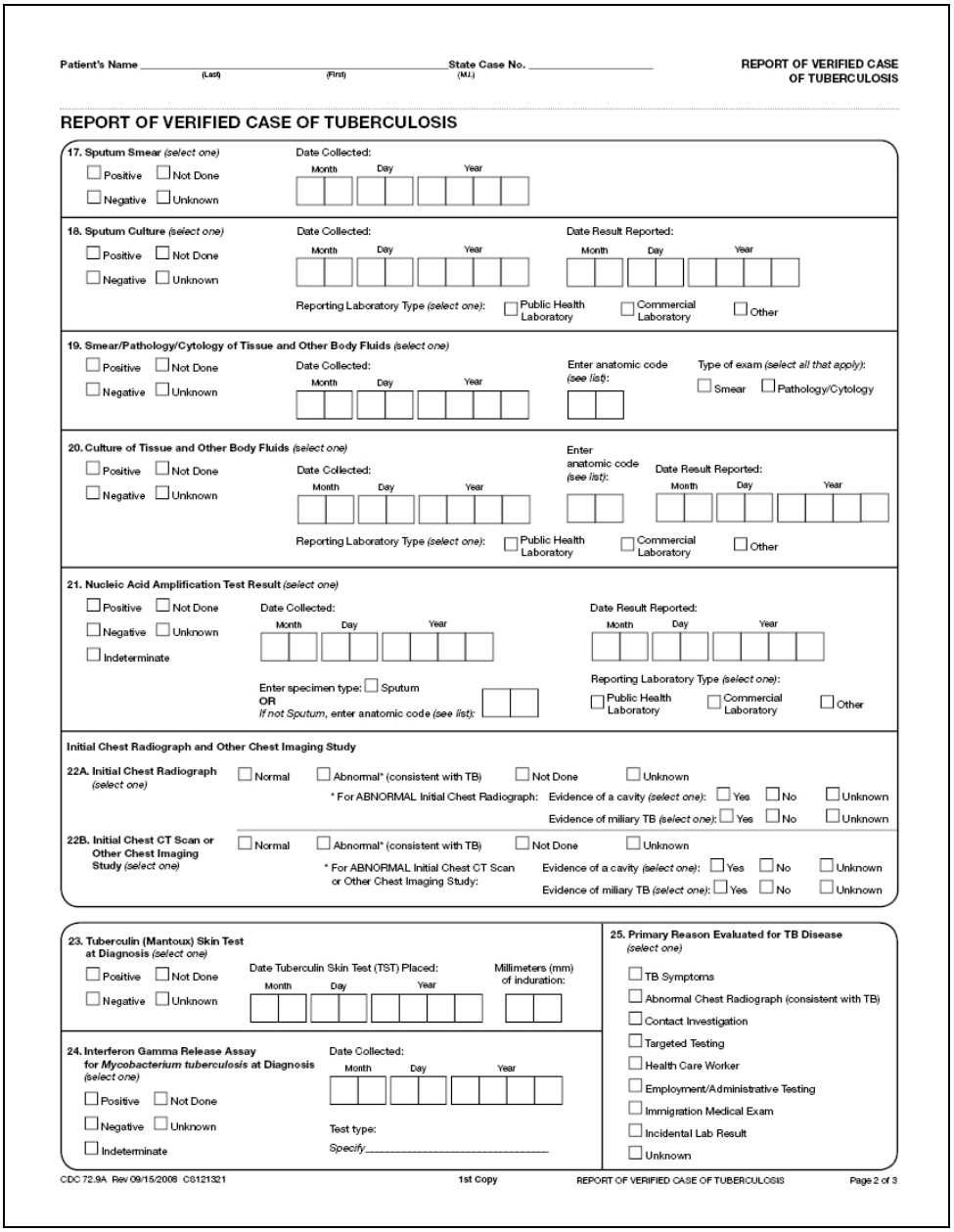
D. A and B are both correct

X E. B and C are both correct

Note for answer: Bone and/or joint is not correct. TB disease is found in both the blood and bone marrow. Choose "Other: enter anatomic code(s)." The anatomic codes are listed in Appendix C – Anatomic Codes.

Module B - RVCT
(page 2 of 3)
Items 17 – 25

Module B provides instructions and exercises for completing page 2 of the RVCT report. It includes data about laboratory results and primary reason the patient was evaluated for TB disease.



Patient's Name _____ (Last) (First) (M.I.) State Case No. _____ REPORT OF VERIFIED CASE OF TUBERCULOSIS

REPORT OF VERIFIED CASE OF TUBERCULOSIS

17. Sputum Smear *(select one)*
☐ Positive ☐ Not Done ☐ Negative ☐ Unknown
Date Collected: Month Day Year

18. Sputum Culture *(select one)*
☐ Positive ☐ Not Done ☐ Negative ☐ Unknown
Date Collected: Month Day Year
Date Result Reported: Month Day Year
Reporting Laboratory Type *(select one)*: ☐ Public Health Laboratory ☐ Commercial Laboratory ☐ Other

19. Smear/Pathology/Cytology of Tissue and Other Body Fluids *(select one)*
☐ Positive ☐ Not Done ☐ Negative ☐ Unknown
Date Collected: Month Day Year
Enter anatomic code *(see list)*:
Type of exam *(select all that apply)*: ☐ Smear ☐ Pathology/Cytology

20. Culture of Tissue and Other Body Fluids *(select one)*
☐ Positive ☐ Not Done ☐ Negative ☐ Unknown
Date Collected: Month Day Year
Enter anatomic code *(see list)*:
Date Result Reported: Month Day Year
Reporting Laboratory Type *(select one)*: ☐ Public Health Laboratory ☐ Commercial Laboratory ☐ Other

21. Nucleic Acid Amplification Test Result *(select one)*
☐ Positive ☐ Not Done ☐ Negative ☐ Unknown ☐ Indeterminate
Date Collected: Month Day Year
Date Result Reported: Month Day Year
Enter specimen type: ☐ Sputum
OR
If not Sputum, enter anatomic code *(see list)*:
Reporting Laboratory Type *(select one)*: ☐ Public Health Laboratory ☐ Commercial Laboratory ☐ Other

Initial Chest Radiograph and Other Chest Imaging Study

22A. Initial Chest Radiograph *(select one)*
☐ Normal ☐ Abnormal* (consistent with TB) ☐ Not Done ☐ Unknown
* For ABNORMAL Initial Chest Radiograph: Evidence of a cavity *(select one)*: ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ Unknown
Evidence of miliary TB *(select one)*: ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ Unknown

22B. Initial Chest CT Scan or Other Chest Imaging Study *(select one)*
☐ Normal ☐ Abnormal* (consistent with TB) ☐ Not Done ☐ Unknown
* For ABNORMAL Initial Chest CT Scan or Other Chest Imaging Study: Evidence of a cavity *(select one)*: ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ Unknown
Evidence of miliary TB *(select one)*: ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ Unknown

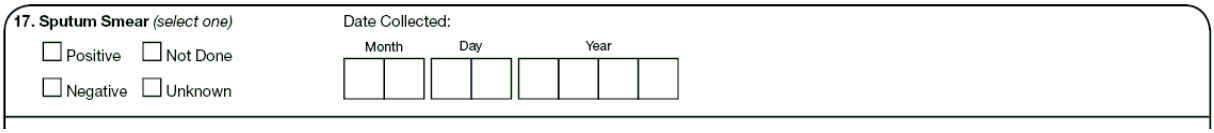
23. Tuberculin (Mantoux) Skin Test at Diagnosis *(select one)*
☐ Positive ☐ Not Done ☐ Negative ☐ Unknown
Date Tuberculin Skin Test (TST) Placed: Month Day Year
Millimeters (mm) of induration:

24. Interferon Gamma Release Assay for *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* at Diagnosis *(select one)*
☐ Positive ☐ Not Done ☐ Negative ☐ Unknown ☐ Indeterminate
Date Collected: Month Day Year
Test type:
*Specify*_____

25. Primary Reason Evaluated for TB Disease *(select one)*
☐ TB Symptoms
☐ Abnormal Chest Radiograph (consistent with TB)
☐ Contact Investigation
☐ Targeted Testing
☐ Health Care Worker
☐ Employment/Administrative Testing
☐ Immigration Medical Exam
☐ Incidental Lab Result
☐ Unknown

CDC 72.9A Rev 09/15/2008 CS121321 1st Copy REPORT OF VERIFIED CASE OF TUBERCULOSIS Page 2 of 3

17. Sputum Smear



Primary Purpose: Case management and surveillance. This result is one factor in determining whether the patient's disease meets the public health definition of TB.

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
Positive	The result of **any** sputum examination was positive for acid-fast bacilli (AFB).	
Negative	Results of **all** examinations were negative.	
Not done	Sputum smear examination is known **not** to have been done.	
Unknown	It is **not** known whether a sputum smear examination was performed. **or** Results are **not** known for a reason other than pending results (e.g., result was lost or specimen was contaminated, and no other specimen can be obtained).	If an initial sputum specimen was collected and results are unknown, but results later become known, update the results.

Comments: Sputum
Sputum includes spontaneous and induced sputum. Do **not** include the results of microscopic examination of pulmonary secretions obtained by tracheal suction, bronchoscopy procedures (e.g., bronchial washing or lavage, scrapings, biopsies), or gastric aspiration. See **Smear/Pathology/Cytology of Tissue and Other Body Fluids** (item 19).

Sputum should have been collected during the diagnostic evaluation or shortly thereafter. Do **not** record specimens collected after the patient has received treatment for more than 2 weeks.

For **Positive** or **Negative** results of sputum smear examinations, enter the following information.

	Description	Comment
Date collected	Month, day, and year the first sputum specimen with a **positive** result was **collected** (e.g., 01/17/2009)	If several sputum examinations were done and the results of 1 or more sputum examinations were **positive**, enter the date the **first** sputum specimen with a positive result was collected.
	Month, day, and year the first **negative** sputum specimen was **collected** (e.g., 01/17/2009) if all results were negative	If several sputum examinations were done and **all** results were **negative**, enter the date the **first** sputum specimen with a negative result was collected.

Exercise
17. Sputum Smear (revised)

Case Study for Items 17 and 18 – James

James is in the hospital from January 13 through January 28, 2009. During that time he is diagnosed with TB. You subsequently receive laboratory reports from the hospital with James' sputum smear results. They are as follows:

- Specimen collected on January 13 - sputum smear result was **positive**
- Specimen collected on January 16 - sputum smear result was **positive**
- Specimen collected on January 22 - sputum smear result was **negative**
- Specimen collected on January 28 - sputum smear result was **negative**

17.1 What option should be selected for Sputum Smear?
(circle the one best answer)

X **A.** Positive

B. Negative

C. Not done

D. Unknown

Note for answer: Select positive if any of the results are positive.

17.2 What is the date collected?
(circle the one best answer)

X **A.** January 13

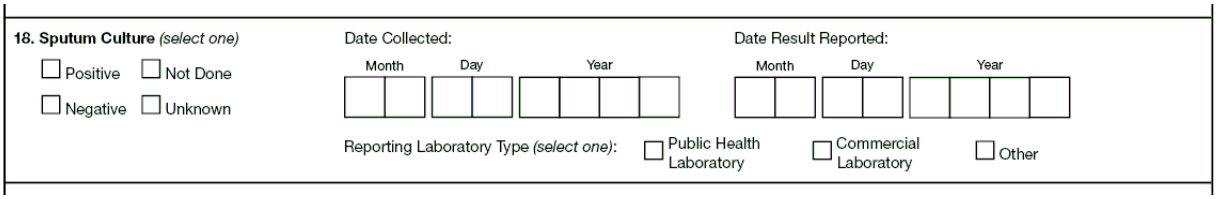
B. January 16

C. January 22

D. January 28

Note for answer: January 13 is the date collected because that was the date when the first positive sputum was collected.

18. Sputum Culture



Primary Purpose: Case management and surveillance. This result is a main factor in determining whether the patient's disease meets the public health definition of TB.

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
Positive	The result of **any** (or the only) sputum culture was positive for *M. tuberculosis* complex.	
Negative	Results of **all** sputum cultures were negative for *M. tuberculosis* complex.	
Not done	It is known that the sputum culture was **not done**.	
Unknown	It is **not** known whether a sputum culture was performed. **or** Results are **not** known for a reason other than pending results (e.g., result was lost or specimen was contaminated, and no other specimen can be obtained).	If an initial sputum specimen was collected and results are unknown, but results later become known, update the results.

Comment: Sputum
Sputum includes spontaneous and induced sputum. **Do not include** the culture results of pulmonary secretions obtained by tracheal suction, bronchoscopy procedures (e.g., bronchial washing or lavage, scrapings, biopsies), or gastric aspiration. For more information, see **Culture of Tissue and Other Body Fluids** (item 20).

Sputum should have been collected during diagnostic work-up or shortly thereafter. Do **not** record specimens collected after the patient has received treatment more than 2 weeks.

For **positive** or **negative** results of sputum cultures, enter the following information.

	Description	Comment
Date collected	Month, day, and year the first sputum specimen with a **positive** culture result was **collected** (e.g., 01/17/2009)	If several sputum cultures were performed and the results of 1 or more were **positive** for *M. tuberculosis* complex, enter the date the **first** sputum culture with a positive result was collected.
	Month, day, and year the first sputum specimen with a **negative** culture result was **collected** (e.g., 01/17/2009) if all results were negative	If several sputum cultures were done and **all** results were **negative**, enter the date the **first** sputum specimen with a negative result was collected.

For the **first** sputum culture reported **positive** for *M. tuberculosis* complex, enter the following information.

	Description	Comment
Date result reported	Month, day, and year the laboratory reported the result (e.g., 01/17/2009)	This date can be found on the laboratory report as the date the report is released or made available. If the day is unknown, enter 99 as the default value (e.g., 01/99/2009).

For **positive** culture results, select the option that best describes the **reporting laboratory type**.

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
Public health laboratory	Any laboratory associated with a local or a state health department	
Commercial laboratory	Any laboratory that charges a fee for each specimen processed or test performed	
Other	Any other laboratory that is **not** considered a **public health laboratory** or a **commercial laboratory**	**Hospital laboratories** (e.g., National Jewish Health hospital laboratory) or **laboratories associated with federal public health agencies** (e.g., Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Veterans Administration, Indian Health Service [IHS], Tribal Health Department, or Bureau of Prisons) National Jewish Health hospital laboratory sometimes charges for services, but for the purposes of the RVCT it is categorized as "Other."

Exercise
18. Sputum Culture

Case Study – James (continued from Item 17)

In February you received faxed copies of the final sputum culture results for James from Forbes Diagnostics Incorporated. These were for the sputum culture specimens collected while James was in the hospital.

- Specimen collected on January 13 – sputum culture result was **negative** and result was received on February 13
- Specimen collected on January 16 – sputum culture result was **positive** and result was received on February 16
- Specimen collected on January 22 – sputum culture result was **positive**, and result was received on February 22
- Specimen collected on January 28 – sputum culture result was **positive**, and result was received on February 28

18.1 What option should be selected for the Sputum Culture?
(circle the one best answer)

X **A.** Positive

B. Negative

C. Not done

D. Unknown

18.2 What is the date collected?
(circle the one best answer)

A. January 13

X **B.** January 16

C. January 22

D. January 28

18.3 What is the date that the result is reported?
(circle the one best answer)

A. February 13

X B. February 16

C. February 22

D. February 28

Note for answer: January 16 was date that the first positive culture specimen was collected. February 16 is the date that the first positive culture was reported.

18.4 What reporting laboratory type should be selected?
(circle the one best answer)

A. Public health laboratory

X B. Commercial laboratory

C. Other

Note for answer: Forbes Diagnostics Incorporated is a commercial laboratory because fees are charged for each specimen processed or test performed.

18.5 What Reporting Laboratory Type should be selected if the sputum sample had been analyzed by National Jewish Health hospital laboratory? (circle the one best answer)

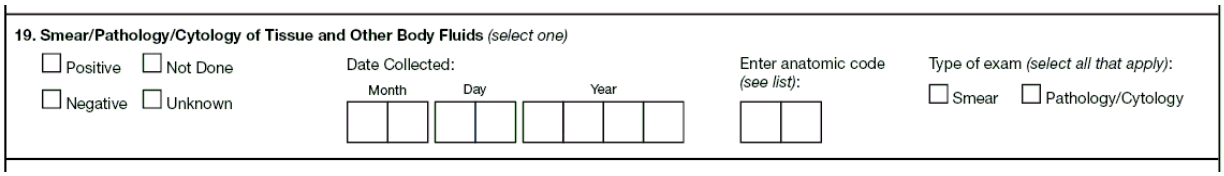
A. Public health laboratory

B. Commercial laboratory

X C. Other

Note for answer: National Jewish Health hospital laboratory is **not** considered a public health laboratory or a commercial laboratory. This laboratory sometimes charges for services, but for the purposes of the RVCT it is categorized as "Other."

19. Smear/Pathology/Cytology of Tissue and Other Body Fluids



Primary Purpose: Case management and surveillance. This result is a factor in determining whether the patient's disease meets the public health definition of TB.

Note: This item is for recording results of a smear, or pathology, or cytology of tissue and/or other body fluids. In this item, "tissue and other body fluids" does **not** include sputum. Examples of tissue and other body fluids are tracheal aspirate, bronchial cells and fluid, urine, bone marrow, lymph node, cerebral spinal fluid, lung tissue or fluid, and pleural fluid that are collected from various procedures (e.g., bronchoscopy, bronchial washing or lavage, biopsy, gastric aspiration, pleural aspiration).

Results from sputum smear examinations and sputum cultures should be entered under **Sputum Smear** (item 17) and **Sputum Culture** (item 18).

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
Positive	**Any** tissue or body fluid **other than sputum** that (see **Note** above) • Tested positive by smear examination **or** • Showed granulomas, granulomatous inflammation, or other pathologic or histologic findings consistent with TB disease during a pathologic/cytologic examination. (Such findings are listed on the pathology or the cytology report.)	**Any positive result supersedes a negative result.**
Negative	**All** specimens of tissue or fluid that • Tested negative by smear examination **or** • Showed **no** evidence of granulomas, granulomatous inflammation, or other pathologic or histologic findings consistent with TB disease during a pathologic/cytologic examination. (Such findings are listed on the pathology or the cytology report.)	
Not done	Examinations of tissue or fluids are known **not** to have been done.	

Unknown	It is **not** known whether tissue or fluids • Were examined **or** • Results are **not** known for a reason other than pending results (e.g., result was lost or specimen was contaminated, and no other specimen can be obtained).	If an initial specimen was collected and results are unknown, but results later become known, update the results.

Comment: When to collect specimen
A smear, or pathology, or cytology specimen should have been collected during diagnostic workup or shortly thereafter. Do **not** record specimens collected after the patient has received treatment more than 2 weeks.

For **positive** or **negative** results of an examination for a smear or, pathology, or cytology of tissue and/or other body fluids, enter the following information.

	Description	Comment
Date collected	Month, day, and year the first specimen with a **positive** result was **collected** (e.g., 01/17/2009)	If several specimen (tissue or fluid) examinations were done and the results of 1 or more examinations were **positive**, enter the date the **first** specimen with a positive result was collected.
	Month, day, and year the first **negative** specimen was **collected** (e.g., 01/17/2009) if all results were negative	If several specimen examinations were done and **all** results were **negative**, enter the date the **first** specimen with a negative result was collected.
Anatomic code	Enter appropriate anatomic code (e.g., 30 for pericardium) from Appendix C – Anatomic Codes.	

Note: For the purposes of the RVCT training materials, use the codes listed in the appendices. Some software programs used to enter data on the RVCT may **NOT** use the codes listed in the appendices. For example, the Anatomic Codes may be a drop-down item where you choose the actual site rather than enter a code. For more information, see instructions for the software you use.

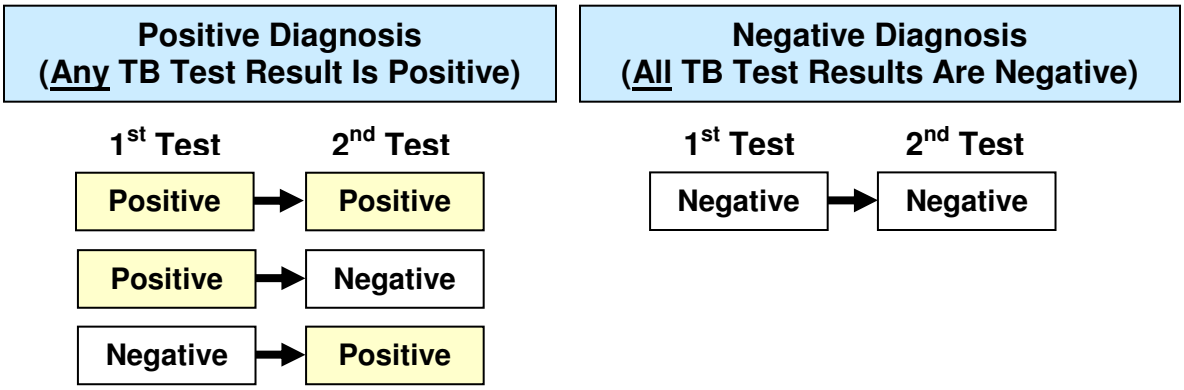
For **Type of Exam**, select both of the following if applicable.

Option *(select all that apply)*	Comment
Smear	Select the type(s) of exam that correspond(s) to the result selected in item 19.
Pathology/cytology	

Comment: Any positive result supersedes a negative result in reporting TB diagnostic criteria.
If the results are discrepant (smear negative, pathology positive), then Type of Exam should correspond to the result captured as positive. If both smear and pathology had been positive, both smear and pathology/cytology should be checked under Type of Exam. Likewise, if both smear and pathology had been negative, then both smear and pathology/cytology should be checked under Type of Exam.

Example: Positive result superseding a negative result
If the smear results were negative and the pathology was positive, then Type of Exam selected should be Pathology. In this case, smear would not be selected because the result was negative.

Reporting TB Diagnostic Criteria
(Positive Result Supersedes Negative Results)



Exercise
19. Smear/Pathology/Cytology of Tissue and Other Body Fluids

Case Study – Tricia

Four-year-old Tricia has a gastric aspiration procedure done on admission to the hospital on January 7, 2009. The laboratory report indicates that the gastric aspirate smear is negative for acid fast bacilli (AFB).

19.1 What option should be selected for Smear/Pathology/Cytology of Tissue and Other Body Fluids?
(circle the one best answer)

- **A.** Positive
- **X B.** Negative
- **C.** Not done
- **D.** Unknown

19.2 What is the anatomic code?
(circle the one best answer)

- **A.** 52 – gastric aspirate
- **X B.** 56 – gastric aspirate
- **C.** 68 – gastric aspirate

19.3 What is the type of exam?
(circle the one best answer)

- **X A.** Smear
- **B.** Pathology/Cytology

Case Study – Sam

Sam has fine needle aspiration to sample lung fluid followed by a lung biopsy. The laboratory report indicates that the smear of the lung fluid is negative for AFB. However, the lung tissue shows AFB, inflammation, and granulomas consistent with TB disease.

19.4 What entry should be selected for the results?
(circle the one best answer)

X **A.** Positive, because the lung tissue shows AFB organisms

B. Negative, because the smear results of the fluid are negative

C. Unknown, because there is a discrepancy between the two tests

19.5 What would be selected for the type of exam?
(circle the one best answer)

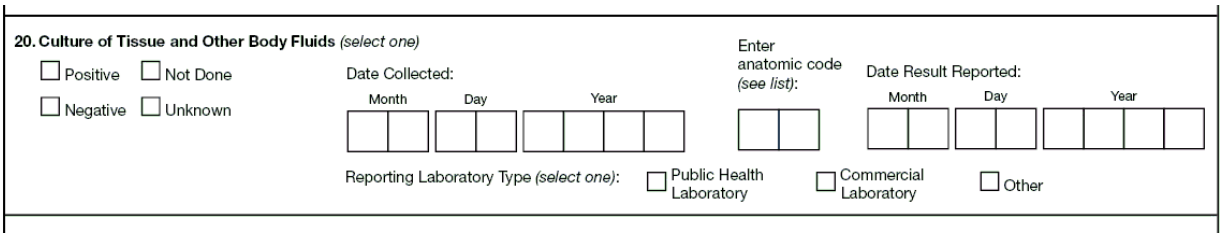
A. Smear

X **B.** Pathology/Cytology

C. Both A and B are correct

Note for answer: Any positive result supersedes a negative result in reporting TB diagnostic criteria. Since the results are discrepant (smear negative, pathology positive), Type of Exam should correspond to the result captured as positive. If both smear and pathology are positive, both smear and pathology/cytology should be checked under Type of Exam.

20. Culture of Tissue and Other Body Fluids



Primary Purpose: Case management and surveillance. This result is a factor in determining whether the patient's disease meets the public health definition of TB.

Note: The term "tissue and other body fluids" **does not include** sputum. Examples of tissue and other body fluids are tracheal aspirate, bronchial cells and fluid, urine, bone marrow, lymph node, cerebral spinal fluid, lung tissue or fluid, and pleural fluid collected from various procedures (e.g., bronchoscopy, bronchial washing or lavage, biopsy, gastric aspiration, pleural aspiration).
Results from sputum smear examinations and sputum cultures should be entered under **Sputum Smear** (item 17) and **Sputum Culture** (item 18).

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
Positive	The culture results for **any** tissue or fluid culture **other than sputum** (see **Note** above) was positive for *M. tuberculosis* complex.	If an initial specimen was collected and results are unknown, but results later become known, update the results. **Any positive result supersedes a negative result.**
Negative	The culture results for **all** tissue or fluid cultures, **other than sputum** cultures, were negative for *M. tuberculosis* complex.	
Not done	It is known that tissue or fluid cultures were **not done**.	
Unknown	It is **not** known whether tissue or fluid cultures were performed **or** Results are **not** known for a reason other than pending results (e.g., result was lost or specimen was contaminated, and no other specimen can be obtained).	If an initial specimen was collected and results are unknown, but results later become known, update the results.

Comment: When to collect specimen
Specimens of tissue and other body fluids should have been collected during diagnostic workup or shortly thereafter. Do **not** record specimens collected after the patient has received treatment for more than 2 weeks.

For **positive** or **negative** result of tissue or fluid culture, enter the following information.

	Description	Comment
Date collected	Month, day, and year the first specimen with a **positive** result was **collected** (e.g., 01/17/2009)	If cultures were performed on several specimens of tissue or fluid and the results of 1 or more were **positive** for *M. tuberculosis* complex, enter the date the **first specimen with a positive** culture result was collected.
	Month, day, and year the first specimen with a **negative** result was **collected** (e.g., 1/17/2009) if all results were negative	If several cultures were done and **all** results were **negative**, enter the date the **first** specimen with a negative result was collected.
Anatomic code	Enter appropriate anatomic code (e.g., 30 for pericardium) from Appendix C – Anatomic Codes.	

Note: For the purposes of the RVCT training materials, use the codes listed in the appendices. Some software programs used to enter data on the RVCT may **NOT** use the codes listed in the appendices. For example, the Anatomic Codes may be a drop-down item where you choose the actual site rather than enter a code. For more information, see instructions for the software you use.

For the **first** tissue or fluid culture reported to be **positive** for *M. tuberculosi*s complex, enter the following information.

	Description	Comment
Date result reported	Month, day, and year the result was reported by the laboratory (e.g., 01/17/2009)	This date can be found on the laboratory report as the date the report is released or made available. If the day is unknown, enter 99 as the default value (e.g., 01/99/2009).

For **positive** results, select the option that best describes the **reporting laboratory type**.

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
Public health laboratory	Any laboratory associated with a local or a state health department	
Commercial laboratory	Any laboratory that charges a fee for each specimen processed or test performed	
Other	Any other laboratory that is **not** considered a **public health laboratory** or a **commercial laboratory**	Hospital laboratories (e.g., National Jewish Health hospital laboratory) and laboratories associated with federal public health agencies (e.g., Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Veterans Administration, Indian Health Service [IHS], Tribal Health Department, and Bureau of Prisons) National Jewish Health hospital laboratory sometimes charges for services, but for the purposes of the RVCT it is categorized as "Other."

Exercise
20. Culture of Tissue and Other Body Fluids

Case Study – Kevin

Kevin is hospitalized for TB meningitis. On October 13, 2009, his cerebral spinal fluid is collected. On October 20, the test result is returned and indicates that the sample had been contaminated. On October 25, a second cerebral spinal fluid sample is taken and sent for culture to the state health laboratory. On November 22, the culture result for the second sample is reported to the hospital as positive for *M. tuberculosis* complex. That same day the result is also reported to the health department.

20.1 What would be selected for Culture of Tissue and Other Body Fluids?
(circle the one best answer)

X **A.** Positive

B. Negative

C. Not done

D. Unknown

20.2 What is the date collected?
(circle the one best answer)

A. October 13, 2009

B. October 16, 2009

X **C.** October 25, 2009

Note for answer: The date collected is the date for the specimen that came back positive. The initial specimen collected on October 13 is contaminated. The second specimen collected on October 25 has a positive result, so that is the date used for **date collected**.

20.3 What should you enter for date result reported?
(circle the one best answer)

A. October 16, 2009

B. October 25, 2009

X **C.** November 22, 2009

20.4 What reporting laboratory type should be selected?
(circle the one best answer)

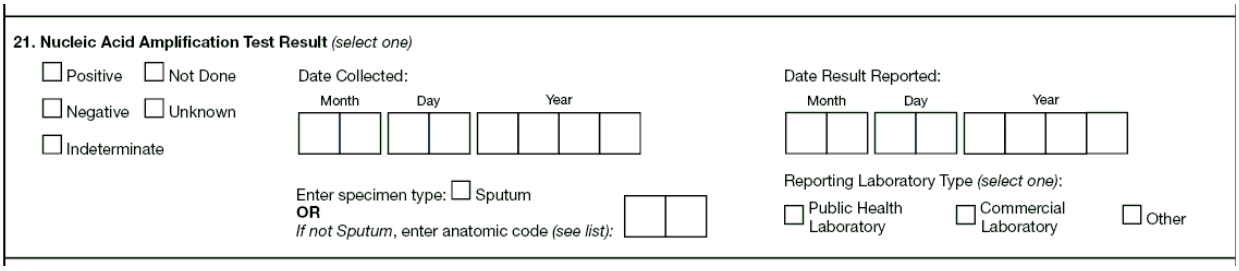
X **A.** Public health laboratory

B. Commercial laboratory

C. Other

Note for answer: Public health laboratory was selected because the specimen was sent to the state health laboratory.

21. Nucleic Acid Amplification Test Result



Primary Purpose: Case management and surveillance. This result is a factor in determining whether the patient's disease meets the public health definition of TB.

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
Positive	**Any** NAA test result was positive for *M. tuberculosis* complex.	**Any positive result supersedes all other test results** (e.g., 1 positive and 2 negatives = positive; 1 indeterminate and 1 negative and 1 positive = positive).
Negative	**No** NAA test results were positive for *M. tuberculosis* complex and at least one result was negative.	**A negative result supersedes indeterminate** (e.g., 1 negative and 1 indeterminate = negative).
Not done	NAA test was **not** performed.	
Unknown	It is **not** known whether an NAA test was performed. **or** NAA test results are **not** known or result is not known for a reason other than pending results.	If an initial specimen was collected and results are unknown, but results later become known, update the results.
Indeterminate	**All** NAA tests were indeterminate (e.g., inconclusive, inhibitory).	All tests are indeterminate.

For **positive** or **negative** results of NAA testing, enter the following information.

	Description	Comment
Date collected	Month, day, and year the first sputum specimen with a **positive** result was **collected** (e.g., 01/17/2009)	If several specimens were collected and the NAA test results of 1 or more were **positive** for *M. tuberculosis* complex, enter the date the **first** specimen with a positive result was collected.
	Month, day, and year the first sputum specimen with a **negative** result was **collected** (e.g., 01/17/2009) if all results were negative	If several specimens were collected and **all** NAA test results were **negative**, enter the date the **first** sputum specimen with a negative result was collected.

Select the **Specimen Type** on which NAA testing was done.

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
Sputum		
Not sputum	Enter appropriate anatomic code (e.g., 30 for pericardium) from Appendix C – Anatomic Codes	

Note: For the purposes of the RVCT training materials, use the codes listed in the appendices. Some software programs used to enter data on the RVCT may **NOT** use the codes listed in the appendices. For example, the Anatomic Codes may be a drop-down item where you choose the actual site rather than enter a code. For more information, see instructions for the software you use.

For the **first** NAA test result reported **positive** for *M. tuberculosis* complex, enter the following information.

	Description	Comment
Date result reported	Month, day, and year the result was reported by the laboratory (e.g., 01/17/2009)	This date can be found on the laboratory report as the date the report is released or made available.

For **positive** NAA test results, select the option that best describes the **reporting laboratory type**.

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
Public health laboratory	Any laboratory associated with a local or a state health department	
Commercial laboratory	Any laboratory that charges a fee for each specimen processed or test performed	
Other	Any other laboratory that is **not** considered a **public health laboratory** or a **commercial laboratory**	Hospital laboratories (e.g., National Jewish Health hospital laboratory) and laboratories associated with federal public health agencies (e.g., Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Veterans Administration, Indian Health Service [IHS], Tribal Health Department, and Bureau of Prisons)

Comment: Nucleic Acid Amplification Tests
The *MMWR* report, "Updated Guidelines for the Use of Nucleic Acid Amplification Tests in the Diagnosis of Tuberculosis," provides information on the NAA tests that have been approved by the Food and Drug Administration for use with AFB smear-positive respiratory specimens. Accessible at www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/mm5801a3.htm.

Exercise
21. Nucleic Acid Amplification Test Result

Case Study – Newton

Newton is planning to go to England on vacation in one week. He is feeling sick and presents at the Newnan County Health Department with symptoms of TB. His doctor requests a **nucleic acid amplification** (NAA) test because he is a TB suspect. The test can determine if Newton has TB disease before he leaves on vacation. The NAA test result is inconclusive.

21.1 What NAA test result should be selected?
(circle the one best answer)

A. Positive

B. Negative

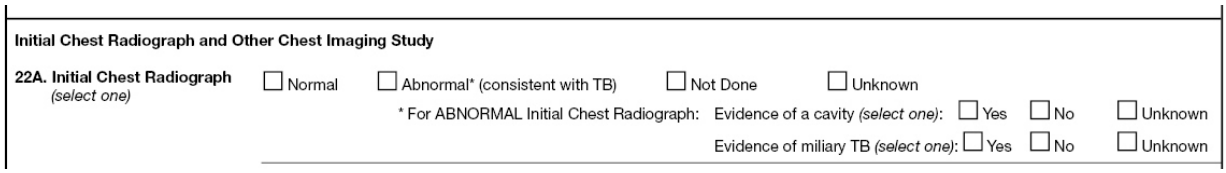
C. Not done

D. Unknown

X E. Indeterminate

Note for answer: The result was reported as indeterminate. Although the test was done, it was inconclusive rather than positive or negative.

22A. Initial Chest Radiograph



Primary Purpose: Case management and surveillance. This is part of a diagnostic evaluation used to determine whether the patient's disease meets the public health definition of TB.

Select the result of the **initial** chest radiograph(s) performed during the diagnostic evaluation for TB.

Option *(select one)*	Description
Normal	Initial chest radiograph(s) showed **no** abnormalities consistent with TB. This category includes any other abnormalities that are **not** consistent with TB.
Abnormal (consistent with TB)	**Any** initial chest radiograph showing abnormalities (e.g., hilar adenopathy, effusion, infiltrate[s], cavity, scarring) consistent with TB.
Not done	It is known that the initial chest radiograph was **not done**.
Unknown	It is **not** known whether an initial chest radiograph was done. **or** Result of initial chest radiograph is **not** known or result is not known for a reason other than pending results.

For **abnormal** results, select one option for each type of evidence.

	Option *(select one)*	Description
Evidence of a cavity	**Yes**	**Any** initial chest radiograph(s) showing evidence of 1 or more lung cavities
	No	
	Unknown	

	Option *(select one)*	Description
Evidence of miliary TB	**Yes**	**Any** initial chest radiograph(s) showed evidence of miliary disease (e.g., miliary TB, or miliary or bilateral micronodular pattern)
	No	
	Unknown	

Comment: Miliary TB
Unlike the previous RVCT form, the new form has no place to select miliary TB in **Site of Disease** (item 16). If the report of the initial chest radiograph or the initial chest CT scan indicates "miliary TB or a miliary or bilateral micronodular pattern," record this finding under **Initial Chest Radiograph** (item 22A) or **Initial Chest CT Scan or Other Chest Imaging Study** (item 22B), respectively. However, pulmonary should be selected as **Site of Disease** (item 16) if the chest x-ray or CT scan shows evidence of nodules consistent with miliary TB.

Miliary TB is a serious type of tuberculosis infection. It is a clinical or radiologic finding, rather than a site of disease. Miliary TB is the result of a TB lung infection eroding into the bloodstream and from there disseminating throughout the body to multiple organs. It appears on radiograph as a great number of small (1- to 2-mm), well-defined nodules that look like millet seeds scattered throughout the lungs, hence the name "miliary."

Exercise
22 A. Initial Chest Radiograph

What is the result of the Initial Chest Radiograph for the following patients?
(Choose the one best answer by matching the results of the initial chest radiograph with the patient. Write in the letter for the result on the line next to the question number.)

		Patient
C___	**22 A.1**	Emily is a 4-year old whose chest radiograph shows tiny (1- to 2-millimeters), well-defined nodules.
A___	**22 A.2**	Alice has a radiograph that shows no evidence of TB.
E___	**22 A.3**	Lawrence was evaluated for TB while living in Arabia and placed on anti-TB drugs. He remembers getting a chest radiograph but is not sure of the result.
B___	**22 A.4**	Roy has a chest radiograph that shows cavities in the left upper lobe of his lung.
D___	**22 A.5**	Frank's laboratory results are consistent with TB disease. On his way to the clinic to get a chest radiograph, he dies in an automobile crash.

Initial Chest Radiograph

A. Normal

B. Abnormal with evidence of cavitary lesion

C. Abnormal with evidence of miliary TB

D. Not Done

E. Unknown

Note for answers:
22 A.1 Emily's result is **C – Abnormal** because her radiograph shows tiny, well-defined nodules, indicating evidence of miliary TB.

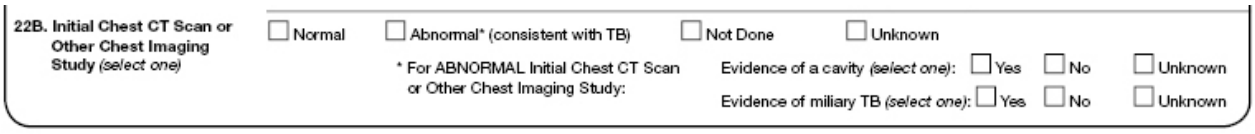
22 A.2 Alice's result is **A – Normal** because her chest radiograph shows no evidence of TB.

22 A.3 Lawrence's result is **E – Unknown** because he remembers getting a chest radiograph but the **result** is not known.

22 A.4 Roy's result is **B – Abnormal with evidence of cavitary lesion** because he has an abnormal chest radiograph with a cavitary lesion.

22 A.5 Frank's result is **D – Not Done** because the radiograph was not done.

22B. Initial Chest CT Scan or Other Chest Imaging Study



Primary Purpose: Case management. This is part of a diagnostic evaluation used to determine whether the patient's disease meets the public health definition of TB.

Select the result of the **initial** chest computerized tomography (CT) or other chest imaging study such as magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), performed during the diagnostic evaluation for TB.

Option *(select one)*	Description
Normal	Initial chest CT scan or other chest imaging study showed no abnormalities consistent with TB. This category includes any other abnormalities that are **not** consistent with TB.
Abnormal (consistent with TB)	**Any** initial chest CT scan or other chest imaging study showed abnormality (e.g., hilar adenopathy, effusion, infiltrate[s], cavity, scarring) consistent with TB.
Not done	It is known that the initial chest CT scan or other chest imaging study was **not done**.
Unknown	It is **not** known whether an initial chest CT scan or other chest imaging study was done. **or** Result of initial chest CT scan or other chest imaging study is **not** known or result is not known for a reason other than pending results.

For **abnormal** chest CT scan or other chest imaging study results, select one option for each type of evidence.

	Option *(select one)*	Description
Evidence of a cavity	**Yes**	**Any** initial chest CT scan or other chest imaging study showed evidence of 1 or more cavities.
	No	
	Unknown	

	Option *(select one)*	Description
Evidence of miliary TB	**Yes**	**Any** initial chest CT scan or other chest imaging study showed evidence of miliary disease (e.g., miliary TB, or miliary or bilateral micronodular pattern).
	No	
	Unknown	

Comment: Miliary TB
Unlike the previous RVCT form, the new form has no place to select miliary TB in **Site of Disease** (item 16). If the report of the initial chest radiograph or the initial chest CT scan indicates "miliary TB or a miliary or bilateral micronodular pattern," record this finding under **Initial Chest Radiograph** (item 22A) or **Initial Chest CT Scan or Other Chest Imaging Study** (item 22B), respectively. However, pulmonary should be selected as **Site of Disease** (item 16) if the chest x-ray or CT scan shows evidence of nodules consistent with miliary TB.

Miliary TB is a serious type of tuberculosis infection. It is a clinical or radiologic finding, rather than a site of disease. Miliary TB is the result of a TB lung infection eroding into the bloodstream and from there disseminating throughout the body to multiple organs. It appears on radiograph as a great number of small (1- to 2-mm), well-defined nodules that look like millet seeds scattered throughout the lungs, hence the name "miliary."

Exercise
22 B. Initial Chest CT Scan or Other Chest Imaging Study

Case Study for Items 16, 22A, and 22B – Anna

Anna is a 3-year-old who was diagnosed with miliary TB disease. It appeared in both her initial chest radiograph and her initial chest CT scan.

22. B. 1 In which item(s) would you record responses indicating that Anna has miliary TB? (circle the one best answer)

A. Item 16 – Site of Disease

B. Item 22 A – Initial Chest Radiograph - Evidence of miliary TB

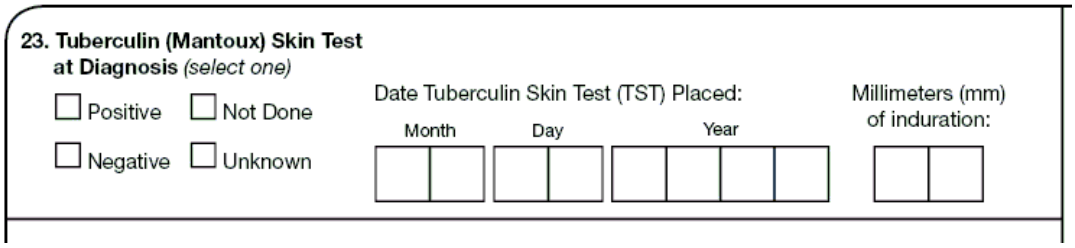
C. Item 22 B – Initial Chest CT Scan or Other Chest Imaging Study – Evidence of miliary TB

D. A, B, and C are correct

X E. Only B and C are correct

Note for answer: Site of Disease (item 16) does not include miliary TB. On the old RVCT, miliary TB could be selected as a **Site of Disease**. However, in this version of the RVCT, items 22A and 22B are the only items that indicate military TB. Since miliary TB appeared in both the initial chest radiograph and the CT scan, the answer is "E."

23. Tuberculin (Mantoux) Skin Test at Diagnosis



Primary Purpose: Case management. This result helps guide clinicians in diagnosing TB infection and is a factor in determining whether the patient's disease meets the public health definition of TB.

Positive or **negative** result of the tuberculin skin test (TST) should be interpreted according to Table 7 of the currently accepted guidelines (www.cdc.gov/mmwr/PDF/rr/rr4906.pdf).

Guidelines for Entering TST Results

Enter	Do Not Enter
Results from a TST performed during the current diagnostic evaluation	A patient's **undocumented** self-report of a previous positive result is **not** acceptable
May enter previous positive test result • If patient had tested **positive** to a previous TST **and** • The previous positive result **is documented** in the medical record.	A previous **negative** TST result (reported by the patient or documented or both) is also **not** acceptable

Option *(select one)*	Description
Positive	Meets the criteria for a positive TST result.
Negative	Result of TST did **not** meet current criteria for a positive test result.
Not done	TST was **not** performed **or** Patient reports a positive result of an earlier TST, but it cannot be documented, **and** now the patient refuses a TST.
Unknown	It is **not** known whether a TST was performed **or** result is not known for a reason other than pending results.

For **positive** or **negative** TST results, enter the following information.

	Description	Comment
Date TST placed	Month, day, and year the TST was placed (e.g., 01/17/2009)	If the month or day is unknown, enter 99 as the default value (e.g., 01/99/2009). Year must be recorded. Do **not** use 9999 for the year.
Millimeters (mm) of induration	Measurement (in millimeters, mm) of the induration (e.g., 05 mm)	If the millimeters of the induration are not expressed, enter 99 as the default value.

Interpreting the TST Reaction

		
5 or more millimeters	**10 or more millimeters**	**15 or more millimeters**
An induration of **5 or more millimeters** is considered **positive** for • People living with HIV • Recent contacts of persons with infectious TB • People who have previously had TB disease • Patients with organ transplants and other immunosuppressed patients (including patients taking a prolonged course of oral or intravenous corticosteriods or TNF-α antagonists)	An induration of **10 or more millimeters** is considered **positive** for • People who have come to the U.S. within the last 5 years from areas of the world where TB is common (for example, Asia, Africa, Eastern Europe, Russia, or Latin America) • People who inject illegal drugs • Mycobacteriology lab workers • People who live or work in high-risk congregate settings • People with certain medical conditions that place them at high risk for TB (silicosis, diabetes mellitus, severe kidney disease, certain types of cancer, and certain intestinal conditions) • Children younger than 4 years • Infants, children, and adolescents exposed to adults in high-risk categories	An induration of **15 or more millimeters** is considered **positive** for • People with no known risk factors for TB

Exercise
23. Tuberculin (Mantoux) Skin Test at Diagnosis

Case Study – Duc

Duc immigrated from Laos to the United States on May 5, 1995. At that time he was seen at the health department, where he had a TST. The TST result was read 2 days later as an induration of 10 millimeters. Since Duc is from Asia, a TST reaction that is 10 or more millimeters is considered a positive reaction. He completed LTBI treatment in May 1996. In March 2009 he is diagnosed with extrapulmonary TB of the left tibia.

23.1 What would you select for Tuberculin (Mantoux) Skin Test at Diagnosis?
(circle the one best answer)

X A. Positive

B. Negative

C. Not done

D. Unknown

23.2 What is the date tuberculin skin test (TST) placed?
(circle the one best answer)

X A.

Month		Day		Year			
0	5	0	5	1	9	9	5

B.

Month		Day		Year			
0	5	9	9	1	9	9	5

C.

Month		Day		Year			
0	5	9	9	1	9	9	6

Note for answers: The documented TST was May 1995.

23.3 What would be entered for millimeters (mm) of induration?
(circle the one best answer)

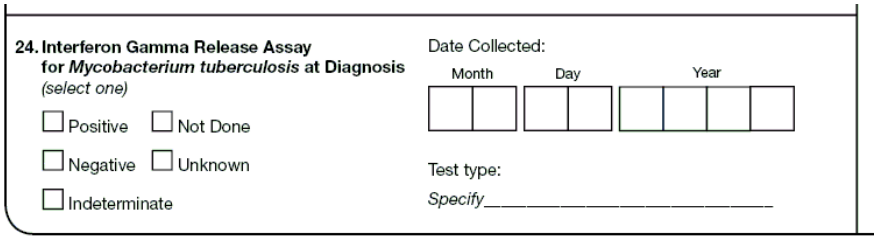
A. Millimeters (mm) of induration

9	9

X B. Millimeters (mm) of induration

1	0

24. Interferon Gamma Release Assay for *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* at Diagnosis



Primary Purpose: Case management. This result helps guide clinicians in diagnosing TB infection and is a factor in determining whether the patient's disease meets the public health definition of TB.

Interferon gamma release assays (IGRAs) are blood tests for detecting *M. tuberculosis* infection. This variable applies to an IGRA performed during the diagnostic evaluation.

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
Positive	**Any** IGRA result was interpreted as "*M. tuberculosis* infection is likely."	**Any positive result supersedes all other test results** (e.g., 1 positive and 2 negatives = positive; 1 indeterminate and 1 negative and 1 positive = positive).
Negative	**All** IGRA results were interpreted as "*M. tuberculosis* infection is unlikely."	**A negative result supersedes indeterminate** (e.g., 1 negative and 1 indeterminate = negative).
Not done	IGRA was **not** performed.	
Unknown	It is **not** known whether IGRA was performed. **or** IGRA results are **not** known, or result is not known for a reason other than pending results.	
Indeterminate	IGRA results could **not** be determined to be positive or negative.	

For **positive** or **negative** results of IGRA, enter the following information.

	Description	Comment
Date collected	Month, day, and year the blood sample was **collected** (e.g., 01/17/2009)	If several blood tests were performed and the results of one or more tests were **positive** for *M. tuberculosis* complex, enter the date the **first** blood test with a positive result was collected.
Test type *(specify)*	Specify the blood test performed [e.g., QuantiFERON®-TB Gold test (QFT-G)]	If more than 1 test was performed, enter the name of the test used for the specimen for which you entered the result.

Exercise

24. Interferon Gamma Release Assay for *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* at Diagnosis

Case Study – Shepo

Shepo is a recent immigrant from Kenya. He works as a maintenance worker at the Winston Animal Research Facility. The facility conducts annual employee screening for TB to prevent exposing the primates to TB. Shepo is tested with a QuantiFERON®-TB Gold test (QFT-G) because he had BCG vaccination as a child. The QFT-G test result is positive. Upon further evaluation, Shepo is diagnosed with active TB disease and an RVCT is initiated for him.

24.1 What would you select for Interferon Gamma Release Assay for *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* at Diagnosis?
(circle the one best answer)

X **A.** Positive

B. Negative

C. Not done

D. Unknown

E. Indeterminate

24.2 What would you specify as the Test Type?
(circle the one best answer)

A. Interferon gamma release assay

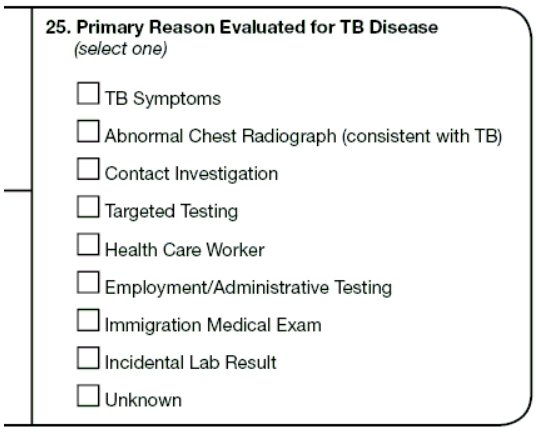
B. Tuberculin skin test

C. Blood test

X **D.** QuantiFERON®-TB Gold test (QFT-G)

E. Unknown

25. Primary Reason Evaluated for TB Disease



Primary Purpose: Programmatic function. Data are helpful in assessing how a TB case was found.

Select the **single primary or initial reason** the patient was evaluated for TB disease. The definition of "primary or initial reason" is the situation or reason that led to the initial suspicion that the patient might have TB disease. If the patient was referred for evaluation, but the reason for the evaluation is unknown, try to determine that reason.

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
TB symptoms	Signs and symptoms consistent with TB (e.g., prolonged persistent cough, fever, lymphadenopathy, night sweats, weight loss)	Select if patient seeks medical attention because of symptoms. Do **not** select if symptoms discovered during a screening program.
Abnormal chest radiograph	Incidental chest radiograph consistent with TB disease	Reason for the chest radiograph should be independent of the other choices listed and should not have been the result of suspicion of TB disease.
Contact investigation	Result of a contact investigation or source case finding	
Targeted testing	Positive result of tuberculin skin test (TST) or interferon gamma release assay (IGRA) administered because the patient was **specifically** considered as high risk for TB (e.g., persons from area of the world with high rate of TB) or as part of a testing program focused on specific groups at risk for TB.	Do **not** select if another reason (e.g., contact investigation, immigration medical examination, employment/ administrative testing, or health care worker status) is more appropriate (see other choices).

Health care worker	Positive result of TST or IGRA administered because the patient was a health care worker	Refers to all paid and unpaid persons working in health care settings who have the potential for exposure to *M. tuberculosis*. For health care workers being evaluated for TB disease, health care worker supersedes targeted testing and employment/administrative testing. Other situations (e.g., TB symptoms, contact investigation) supersede health care worker.
Employment/ administrative testing	Results from routine physical examination **before or periodically during** employment, TST or IGRA required by employer, or primary or secondary school program for routine TST	Reflects an administrative requirement (e.g., a TST program applied to all 5th graders in a school or to all job applicants) rather than testing of a group considered at high risk. If TST or IGRA was performed because the person was considered at high risk, select targeted testing or a more appropriate category, such as health care worker. If employment was health care–related, **select health care worker rather than employment/administrative testing.**
Immigration medical exam	Findings of a medical examination that was part of the immigration application process	A medical examination is mandatory for specific categories of persons seeking admission to the United States (e.g., immigrants, refugees, asylees). These medical examinations may be performed **overseas or in the United States** depending on the situation. In addition, a medical examination may be required for some persons applying for nonimmigrant visas or special status (e.g., parolees) for temporary admission to the United States.
Incidental lab result	The clinical evaluation was for something other than TB (e.g., bronchoscopy or autopsy). Specimens were collected and submitted for evaluation of TB and other diseases for diagnostic completeness. TB was not expected.	
Unknown	Reason for evaluating the patient **not** known	

Example: TB Symptoms
If a TB patient seeks medical care because of TB symptoms, select **TB Symptoms** as the primary reason for the evaluation. If, however, a TB patient was initially encountered via a contact investigation and during that investigation was also noted to have TB symptoms, select **Contact Investigation** as the primary reason for the evaluation.

Example: Abnormal Chest Radiograph
If the chest radiograph was performed during a workup for TB disease because of a positive TST result obtained during targeted testing, select **Targeted Testing**. However, if a chest radiograph was performed as part of preoperative testing (TB disease was not suspected), select **Abnormal Chest Radiograph**.

Examples: Health Care Worker
Includes full time, part-time, temporary, or contract staff. Examples include:

- Physicians
- Nurses
- Health aides
- Dental workers
- Health technicians
- Staff in laboratories and morgues
- Emergency medical personnel
- Students enrolled in health care programs
- Persons who deliver health care in the community (e.g., public health nurse, visiting nurse, outreach worker)
- Persons not involved directly in patient care, but potentially at risk for occupational exposure (e.g., correctional facility staff, volunteers; outreach workers; dietary/nutritional, housekeeping, maintenance, clerical, janitorial staff, administrative staff and supervisors)

Exercise
25. Primary Reason Evaluated for TB Disease

What is the Primary Reason Evaluated for TB for the following patients?
(Choose the one best answer by matching the **primary reason evaluated** with the patient. Write the letter for the reason on the line next to the question number.)

	Patient	
E___	**25.1**	Alan is a nurse at New York City health department and participated in the annual workplace TST screening program.
H___	**25.2**	During an autopsy performed on Ben, the pathologist orders a complete analysis of various tests to help determine cause of death. TB is not suspected, but the AFB test result indicates Ben had TB.
C___	**25.3**	A health care worker is providing DOT to Carla's father. During one of the DOT visits the health care worker evaluates Carla for TB. Carla is then diagnosed with TB disease.
B___	**25.4**	Drew is in an automobile accident and has a chest radiograph taken for a possible broken rib. The chest radiograph also shows a lung cavity.
A___	**25.5**	Ellen goes to the out patient clinic because she has been coughing and recently lost weight.
G___	**25.6**	Tran recently immigrated from Vietnam and was diagnosed with TB disease.
D___	**25.7**	George is HIV infected. His doctor at the HIV clinic has him tested for TB infection.
F___	**25.8**	Harry is a new primate keeper at the Magnolia Zoo where TSTs are routinely performed on all new employees.

Primary Reason Evaluated for TB
A. TB symptoms
B. Abnormal chest radiograph
C. Contact investigation
D. Targeted testing
E. Health care worker
F. Employment/ Administrative testing
G. Immigration medical exam
H. Incidental laboratory result

Note for answer: 25.1 is E. Health care worker because that reason supersedes Employment/Administrative testing.

Case Study – Lanie

Lanie is a nurse at the Canton Health Department in Ohio. She is identified as a contact during the contact investigation for her brother-in-law, who has TB disease. During the evaluation, Lanie is diagnosed with TB disease also. She completes therapy on September 12, 2009.

25.9 What is the Primary Reason Lanie was Evaluated for TB in Ohio?
(circle the one best answer)

A. Health care worker

X **B.** Contact investigation

C. TB symptoms

D. Targeted testing

Case Study – Lanie (continued)

On October 1, 2009, Lanie accepts a nursing position at the Indianapolis Health Department in Indiana. On December 14, 2009, Lanie goes to the clinic because she is coughing up blood and is worried that TB has returned. Her laboratory results indicate that her sputum is smear and culture positive.

25.10 What is the Primary Reason Lanie was Evaluated for TB in Indiana?
(circle the one best answer)

A. Health care worker

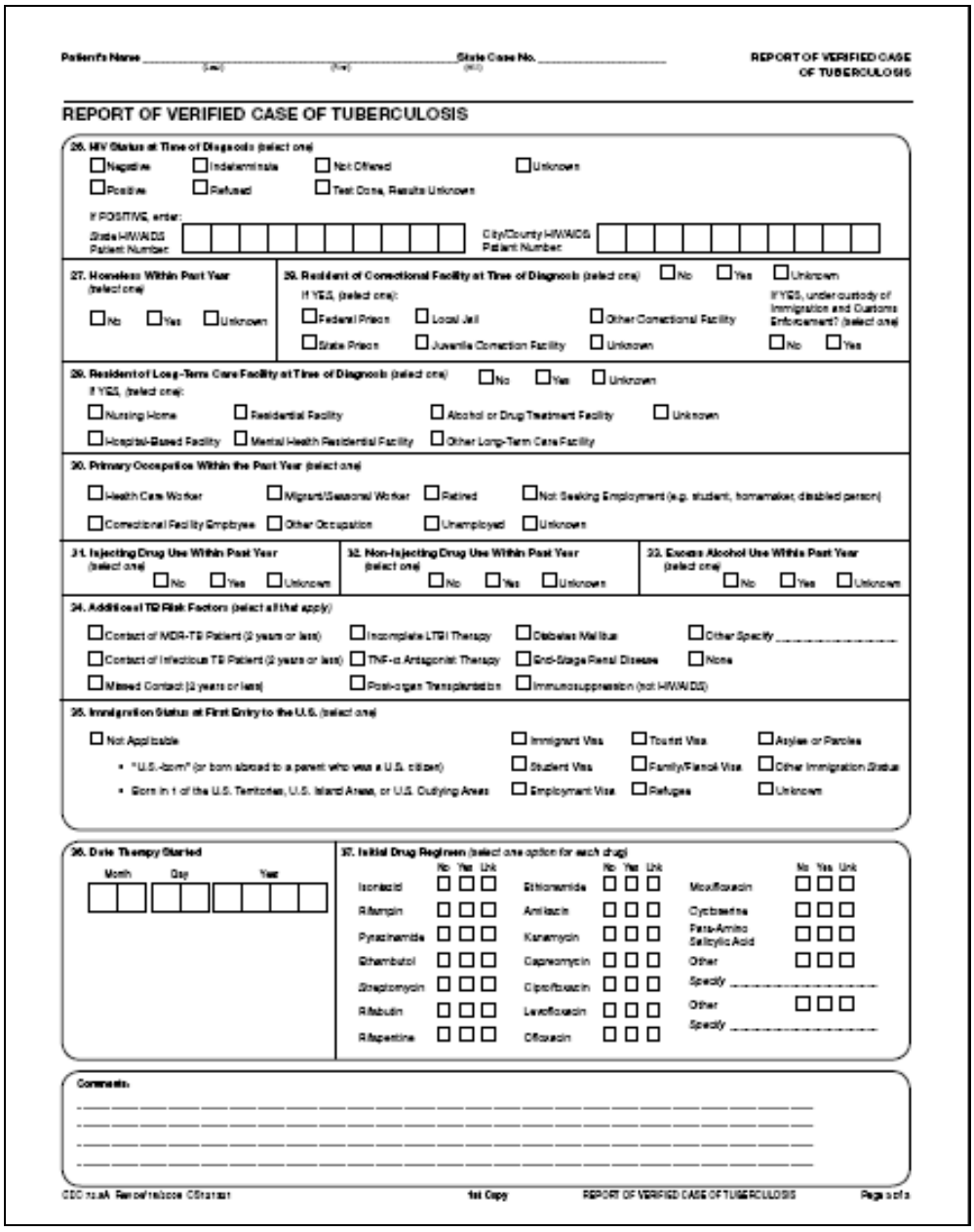
B. Contact investigation

X **C.** TB symptoms

D. Targeted testing

Module C - RVCT
(page 3 of 3)
Items 26 – 37

Module C provides instructions and exercises for completing page 3 of the RVCT report. It includes data about risks associated with TB, the date that therapy was started, and the initial drug regimen.



Patient's Name _____ State Case No. _____ REPORT OF VERIFIED CASE OF TUBERCULOSIS

REPORT OF VERIFIED CASE OF TUBERCULOSIS

26. HIV Status at Time of Diagnosis (select one)
☐ Negative ☐ Indeterminate ☐ Not Offered ☐ Unknown
☐ Positive ☐ Refused ☐ Test Done, Results Unknown
If POSITIVE, enter:
State HIV/AIDS Patient Number: ☐☐☐☐☐☐☐☐☐☐ City/County HIV/AIDS Patient Number: ☐☐☐☐☐☐☐☐☐☐

27. Homeless Within Past Year (select one)
☐ No ☐ Yes ☐ Unknown

29. Resident of Correctional Facility at Time of Diagnosis (select one) ☐ No ☐ Yes ☐ Unknown
If YES, (select one):
☐ Federal Prison ☐ Local Jail ☐ Other Correctional Facility
☐ State Prison ☐ Juvenile Correction Facility ☐ Unknown
If YES, under custody of Immigration and Customs Enforcement? (select one) ☐ No ☐ Yes

29. Resident of Long-Term Care Facility at Time of Diagnosis (select one) ☐ No ☐ Yes ☐ Unknown
If YES, (select one):
☐ Nursing Home ☐ Residential Facility ☐ Alcohol or Drug Treatment Facility ☐ Unknown
☐ Hospital-Based Facility ☐ Mental Health Residential Facility ☐ Other Long-Term Care Facility

30. Primary Occupation Within the Past Year (select one)
☐ Health Care Worker ☐ Migrant/Seasonal Worker ☐ Retired ☐ Not Seeking Employment (e.g. student, homemaker, disabled person)
☐ Correctional Facility Employee ☐ Other Occupation ☐ Unemployed ☐ Unknown

31. Injecting Drug Use Within Past Year (select one) ☐ No ☐ Yes ☐ Unknown

32. Non-Injecting Drug Use Within Past Year (select one) ☐ No ☐ Yes ☐ Unknown

33. Excess Alcohol Use Within Past Year (select one) ☐ No ☐ Yes ☐ Unknown

34. Additional TB Risk Factors (select all that apply)
☐ Contact of MDR-TB Patient (2 years or less) ☐ Incomplete LTBI Therapy ☐ Diabetes Mellitus ☐ Other Specify _____
☐ Contact of Infectious TB Patient (2 years or less) ☐ TNF-α Antagonist Therapy ☐ End-Stage Renal Disease ☐ None
☐ Mixed Contact (2 years or less) ☐ Post-organ Transplantation ☐ Immunosuppression (not HIV/AIDS)

35. Immigration Status at First Entry to the U.S. (select one)
☐ Not Applicable
- "U.S.-born" (or born abroad to a parent who was a U.S. citizen)
- Born in 1 of the U.S. Territories, U.S. Island Areas, or U.S. Outlying Areas

☐ Immigrant Visa ☐ Tourist Visa ☐ Asylee or Parolee
☐ Student Visa ☐ Family/Fiancé Visa ☐ Other Immigration Status
☐ Employment Visa ☐ Refugee ☐ Unknown

36. Date Therapy Started
Month ☐☐ Day ☐☐ Year ☐☐☐☐

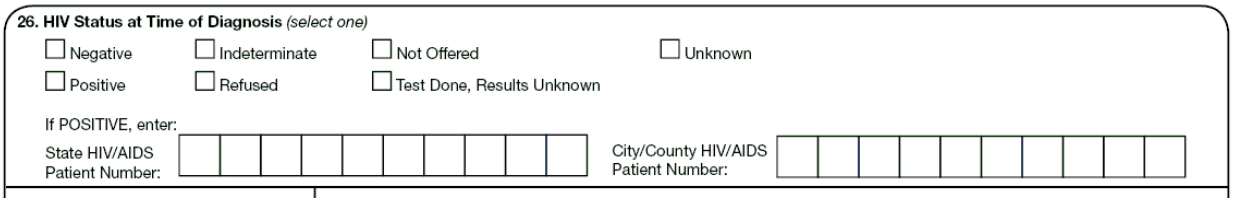
37. Initial Drug Regimen (select one option for each drug)

	No	Yes	Unk		No	Yes	Unk		No	Yes	Unk
Isoniazid	☐	☐	☐	Ethionamide	☐	☐	☐	Moxifloxacin	☐	☐	☐
Rifampin	☐	☐	☐	Amikacin	☐	☐	☐	Cycloserine	☐	☐	☐
Pyrazinamide	☐	☐	☐	Kanamycin	☐	☐	☐	Para-Amino Salicylic Acid	☐	☐	☐
Ethambutol	☐	☐	☐	Capreomycin	☐	☐	☐	Other	☐	☐	☐
Streptomycin	☐	☐	☐	Ciprofloxacin	☐	☐	☐	Specify _____			
Rifabutin	☐	☐	☐	Levofloxacin	☐	☐	☐	Other	☐	☐	☐
Rifapentine	☐	☐	☐	Ofloxacin	☐	☐	☐	Specify _____			

Comments:
_____
_____
_____
_____

CDC 71.28A Revised February 2010 1st Copy REPORT OF VERIFIED CASE OF TUBERCULOSIS Page 3 of 3

26. HIV Status at Time of Diagnosis



Primary Purpose: Case management and surveillance. Data are used to determine TB/HIV co-morbidity.

Note: CDC recommends that **all** persons receive HIV testing at the time of TB diagnostic evaluation or TB diagnosis. Refer to the CDC public health surveillance definition of HIV infection (http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/rr4813a2.htm).

Note: Documentation of an HIV test result is needed. This documentation from a hospital, clinic, or private provider, should be written evidence of the test result, or it can be notes in the medical record. The test result should have been determined within the specified time indicated in the instructions below.

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
Negative	Documented negative result of HIV test at the time of TB diagnostic evaluation or at TB diagnosis or earlier, but not exceeding 1 year	Undocumented report is **not** acceptable.
Positive	Laboratory result interpreted as positive according to published criteria **or** Documented positive result of an earlier HIV test or documented earlier diagnosis of HIV infection or AIDS	Undocumented report is **not** acceptable.
Indeterminate	Documented indeterminate result of an HIV test at the time of TB diagnostic evaluation or TB diagnosis	Undocumented report is **not** acceptable.
Refused	HIV testing offered but declined at the time of the TB diagnostic evaluation or TB diagnosis	
Not offered	HIV testing **not** offered at the time of the TB diagnostic evaluation or TB diagnosis	
Test done, results unknown	HIV test performed at the time of the TB diagnostic evaluation or TB diagnosis, but the results **not** known to the TB program, or result is not known for a reason other than pending results.	

Unknown	**Not** known whether the patient • Has had an HIV test • Was ever offered a test • Was referred for HIV counseling and testing (e.g. anonymous testing center, private testing center)	

Comments: Negative HIV status

- Undocumented patient report that an HIV test result was negative is **not** acceptable. Such patients should be offered the opportunity to be tested for HIV.

- If a patient has had a negative test result, regardless of when the HIV test was performed, the patient should be offered HIV testing at the time of TB diagnostic evaluation or TB diagnosis.

- If the patient had received HIV testing **less than 1 year before the TB diagnostic evaluation or TB diagnosis**, the documented results were negative for HIV infection, and the patient reports no risk factor for HIV, check **Negative** for this item.

- A documented negative HIV test from 1 year ago or longer is **not** valid for checking **Negative**.

Note: Update this item if additional information is obtained during the course of treatment.

For **Positive** HIV status at the time of TB diagnosis, enter the following information.

	Description
State HIV/AIDS patient number	Can be obtained from the state or local HIV/AIDS surveillance program
City/county HIV/AIDS patient number	Can be obtained from the state or local HIV/AIDS surveillance program

Exercise
26. HIV Status at Time of Diagnosis

Case Study – Harvey

Harvey is diagnosed with TB at the County Health Department in May 2009. He is offered HIV testing. He states that he was tested earlier that year in January 2009 and the results were negative. Harvey has no other risk factors for HIV. With Harvey's permission, the TB program confirms the negative HIV test result by reviewing his HIV result listed in his medical records.

26.1 What would be selected for Harvey's HIV Status at Time of Diagnosis?
(circle the one best answer)

X **A.** Negative

B. Positive

C. Indeterminate

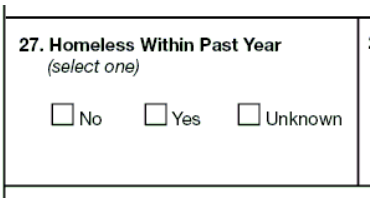
D. Refused

E. Not offered

F. Test Done, Results Unknown

G. Unknown

27. Homeless Within Past Year



Primary Purpose: Surveillance. Data are used to determine the extent to which recent homelessness is associated with TB disease.

Option *(select one)*	Description
No	**Not** homeless during the 12 months before the TB diagnostic evaluation was performed or initiated
Yes	Homeless at **any time** during the 12 months before the TB diagnostic evaluation was performed or initiated
Unknown	**Not** known whether the patient was homeless during the 12 months before the TB diagnostic evaluation was performed or initiated

Comments: Definitions for Homeless

There are many definitions for *homeless* (National Coalition for the Homeless). A **homeless** person may be an individual who has

1. No fixed, regular, and adequate nighttime residence
   and
2. A primary nighttime residence that is
   a. A supervised publicly or privately operated shelter designed to provide temporary living accommodations, including welfare hotels, congregate shelters, and transitional housing for the mentally ill
      or
   b. An institution that provides a temporary residence for individuals intended to be institutionalized
      or
   c. A public or private place not designated for, or ordinarily used as, a regular sleeping accommodation for human beings.

A **homeless** person may also be defined as a person who has no home (e.g., is not paying rent, does not own a home, and is not steadily living with relatives or friends). Persons in unstable housing situations (e.g., alternating between multiple residences for short stays of uncertain duration) may also be considered homeless.

A **homeless** person may be a person who lacks customary and regular access to a conventional dwelling or residence. Included as homeless are persons who live on streets or in nonresidential buildings. Also included are residents of homeless shelters and shelters for battered women. Residents of welfare hotels and single room occupancy (SRO) hotels could also be considered homeless. In the rural setting, where there are usually few shelters, a homeless person may live in non-residential structures, or substandard housing, or with relatives. *Homeless* does not refer to a person who is imprisoned or in a correctional facility.

Note: The homeless category is limited to living conditions in the United States and does **not** apply to living in refugee camps outside the United States.

Note: Update this item if additional information is obtained during the course of treatment.

Exercise
27. Homeless Within Past Year

Case Study – Oscar

Oscar lost his job in December 2008 and subsequently lost his apartment. He had no place to live except when staying with friends or relatives for a few days at a time throughout January 2009. Since then he has lived in homeless shelters and had meals at soup kitchens operated by the American Red Cross. Oscar found a job in July 2009 and has been living in his current apartment since then. He is diagnosed with TB at the Carroll County Health Department in November 2009.

27.1 How would you fill out Homeless within the Past Year for Oscar?
(circle the one best answer.)

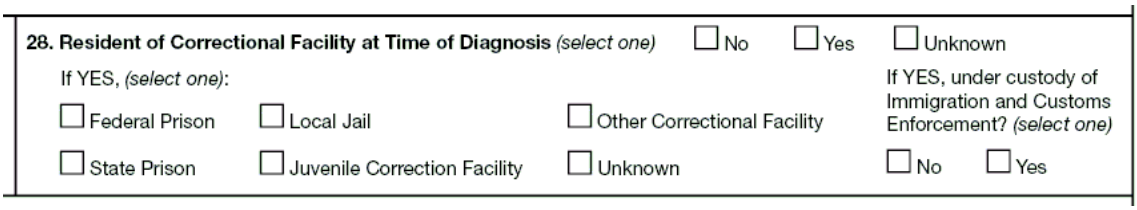
A. No

X **B.** Yes

C. Unknown

Note for answer: Yes, because he was homeless at some time during the past year.

28. Resident of Correctional Facility at Time of Diagnosis



Primary Purpose: Surveillance. Data are used to determine if residence in a correctional facility is associated with TB disease.

Note: Direct the questions regarding classification of a specific correctional facility (federal, state, local, juvenile, or other) to the Department of Corrections in your state.

Option *(select one)*	Description
No	**Not** an inmate when the TB diagnostic evaluation was performed or initiated
Yes	An inmate of a correctional facility when the TB diagnostic evaluation was performed or initiated
Unknown	**Not** known whether the patient was an inmate when the TB diagnostic evaluation was performed or initiated

If you selected **Yes,** indicate the type of correctional facility where the patient was an inmate. If the TB patient was a resident of more than 1 facility during the diagnostic evaluation, select the facility where the initial TB diagnostic evaluation was performed.

Option *(select one)*	Description
Federal prison	Confinement facility administered by a federal agency; includes privately operated federal correctional facilities
State prison	Confinement facility administered by a state agency; includes privately operated state correctional facilities
Local jail	Confinement facility usually administered by a local law enforcement agency, intended for adults but sometimes also containing juveniles; holds persons detained pending adjudication and/or persons committed after adjudication, typically for sentences of 1 year or less
Juvenile correctional facility	Public or private residential facility; includes juvenile detention centers, reception and diagnostic centers, ranches, camps, farms, boot camps, residential treatment centers, and halfway houses or group homes designated specifically for juveniles

Other correctional facility	Includes Immigration and Customs Enforcement (ICE) detention centers, Indian reservation facilities (e.g., tribal jails), military stockades and jails, federal park police facilities, police lockups (temporary holding facilities for persons who have **not** been formally charged in court), or other correctional facilities that are **not** included in the other specific choices
Unknown	Inmate when the TB diagnostic evaluation was performed, but the type of correctional facility is **not** known

Comment: Correctional facility at time of diagnosis
If a patient is an inmate at a correctional facility and goes to a hospital for TB diagnostic evaluation, you would select

- Yes, an inmate of a correctional facility when the TB diagnostic evaluation was performed
- The type of correctional facility (rather than the hospital) where he/she resided at time of diagnostic evaluation

Comment: Local Jail
Excludes temporary holding facilities, or lockups, that do not hold persons after they have been formally charged in court. Includes city and county jails and privately operated local correctional facilities. Report federal and state prisoners who are boarded at local jails as residents of the local jail.

Comment: Juvenile Correctional Facility
Includes juveniles charged or adjudicated as delinquents, juveniles who are not delinquents or criminal offenders (e.g., runaways, truants, incorrigibles, curfew violators), and juveniles committed or detained for treatment of abuse, dependency, neglect, or other reasons. Report juveniles who are boarded at federal or state prisons or local jails as residents of the facility at which they are boarded.

If you selected **Yes**, indicate whether this patient was **under custody of Immigration and Customs Enforcement (ICE)**.

Option *(select one)*	Comment
No	Response indicates whether the patient was under the custody of ICE at the time of diagnosis. Persons in ICE custody can be housed in standalone ICE detention centers, or other correctional facilities (e.g., federal or state prison, local jail) when a standalone ICE detention center is not available.
Yes	

Note: Update this item if additional information is obtained during the course of treatment.

Exercise
28. Resident of Correctional Facility at Time of Diagnosis

Case Study – Pedro

Pedro has been in the U.S. 6 months. He is incarcerated at the Lanner County Jail. He has signs and symptoms of TB. He is evaluated by a health care provider at the jail. A sputum sample is collected on April 25 and sent to the health department. On May 1 he is transferred to the Immigration and Customs Enforcement (ICE) Detention Center in Margaritaville, Alabama, where he waits to be deported. The test result is positive for TB and becomes available on May 5.

28.1 What type of correctional facility should be selected at time of diagnosis (diagnostic evaluation) for Pedro? (circle the one best answer)

A. Federal Prison

B. State Prison

X C. Local Jail

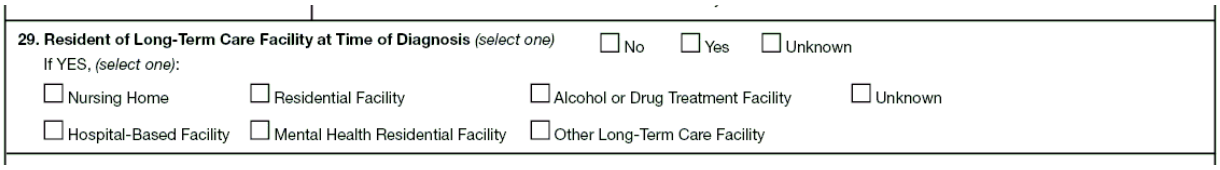
D. Juvenile Correction Facility

E. Other Correctional Facility

F. Unknown

Note for answer: Local jail is the answer because he was at Lanner County Jail when the **diagnostic evaluation** was performed, even though the result did not come back until he was in the ICE Detention Center.

29. Resident of Long-Term Care Facility at Time of Diagnosis


29. Resident of Long-Term Care Facility at Time of Diagnosis *(select one)* ☐ No ☐ Yes ☐ Unknown
If YES, *(select one)*:
☐ Nursing Home ☐ Residential Facility ☐ Alcohol or Drug Treatment Facility ☐ Unknown
☐ Hospital-Based Facility ☐ Mental Health Residential Facility ☐ Other Long-Term Care Facility

Primary Purpose: Surveillance. Data are used to determine if residence in a long-term care facility is associated with TB disease.

Note: The state licensing agency for long-term care facilities can assist in determining the category under which a facility is classified.

Option *(select one)*	Description
No	**Not** a resident of a long-term care facility when the TB diagnostic evaluation was performed
Yes	Resident of a long-term care facility when the TB diagnostic evaluation was performed
Unknown	**Not** known whether the patient was a resident of a long-term care facility when the TB diagnostic evaluation was performed

If you selected **Yes**, indicate the type of long-term care facility of which the patient was a resident. If the TB patient was a resident of more than 1 facility during the diagnostic evaluation, select the facility where most of the TB diagnostic evaluation was performed.

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
Nursing home	Freestanding facility with 3 or more beds (i.e., is classified as a residential facility or congregate residential setting) that provides nursing care services (e.g., nursing or medical care and/or supervision of medications that may be self-administered)	Facilities may be certified by Medicare or Medicaid or may be licensed by the state as a nursing home (e.g., skilled nursing facility, intermediate care facility, nursing care unit of a retirement center)
Hospital-based facility	Distinct unit with 3 or more beds that is physically attached to, or managed by, a hospital	Facilities may be certified by Medicare or Medicaid or may be licensed by the state.

Residential facility	Facility with 3 or more beds (i.e., is classified as a residential facility or congregate residential setting) and meets both of the following criteria: 1. Not classified as a nursing home or hospital-based facility, as described above **and** 2. Provides personal care or supervision (not nursing care services) to its residents, in addition to room and board (e.g., help with bathing, dressing, eating, walking, shopping)	This might be an assisted living facility.
Mental health residential facility	Facility that provides 24-hour care in a hospital, residential treatment, or supportive setting	Include state and local mental hospitals, private psychiatric hospitals, general hospitals, the Department of Veterans Affairs (VA), residential treatment centers for emotionally disturbed children, and multiservice mental health organizations with residential treatment programs. **For other federal mental health residential facilities, select "Other long-term care facility."** Examples include the Department of Defense, Bureau of Prisons, Public Health Service, Indian Health Service, and Indian reservation facilities that are **not** federal.
Alcohol or drug treatment facility	Only long-term rehabilitation or residential facilities designated for treatment of **30 days or longer**	Exclude all ambulatory or outpatient facilities, detoxification units, and facilities designated for fewer than 30 days of treatment. The state agency responsible for alcohol and drug treatment can assist in determining whether a facility is considered residential.
Other long-term care facility	A facility **not** mentioned above that is designated for treatment of **30 days or longer and facility type is not Unknown**	
Unknown	Patient known to be a resident of a long-term care facility, but the type of facility is **not** known	

Examples: Residential Facility

- Assisted living facilities
- Homes for mentally retarded or developmentally disabled persons
- Boarding and care homes (e.g., residential care homes, group homes, homes for the aged, family care homes, adult foster care homes, personal care homes, adult congregate living facilities, residential community care facilities, domiciliary care homes)

Examples: Mental Health Residential Facility

- State and local mental hospitals
- Private psychiatric hospitals
- General hospitals (not federal) with separate psychiatric services
- Department of Veterans Affairs (VA) medical centers
- Residential treatment centers for emotionally disturbed children
- Multiservice mental health organizations with residential treatment programs

Note: Update this item if additional information is obtained during the course of treatment.

Exercise
29. Resident of Long-Term Care Facility at Time of Diagnosis

Case Study – Gladys

Gladys was a resident of the Brittany Nursing Home for 5 months from April 2009 until September 2009 while she recovered from a stroke. She returned to her home; 2 months later, in November 2009, she is evaluated and diagnosed with TB.

29.1 Was Gladys a Resident of Long-Term Care Facility at Time of Diagnosis?
(circle the one best answer)

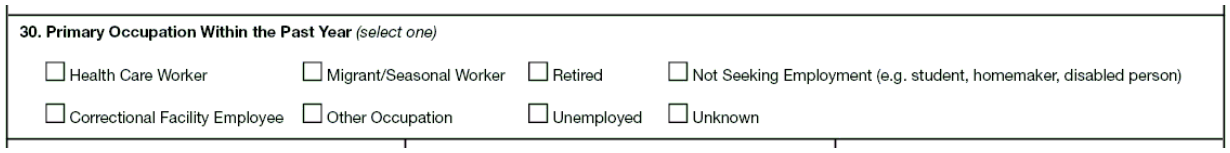
X **A.** No

B. Yes

C. Unknown

Note for answer: At the time of diagnosis, Gladys is living at home, not at the nursing facility. She may have acquired TB while she lived at the nursing home, but that is not where she was diagnosed. In addition, Gladys was not evaluated for TB when she was at the nursing facility.

30. Primary Occupation Within the Past Year



Primary Purpose: Surveillance. Data are used to determine if certain primary occupations are associated with TB disease.

Select one option that best describes the patient's occupation within the 12 months before the diagnostic TB evaluation. If the patient held more than 1 occupation during that period, select the longest-held occupation or the occupation to which the patient devoted more time (i.e., the patient's **primary** occupation). For example, if the patient was a full-time health care worker and a student (e.g., taking night classes), the patient's primary occupation would be **Health Care Worker**.

Option *(select one)*	Description
Health care worker	Paid or unpaid person working in a health care setting, with potential for exposure to *M. tuberculosis.* For health care workers being evaluated for TB disease, **health care worker supersedes correctional facility or other occupations**.
Correctional facility employee	Person working in a correctional facility; not a health care worker
Migrant/seasonal worker	Person who is required to be absent from a permanent place of residence for the purpose of seeking employment, or who may vary their employment for the purpose of remaining employed while maintaining a permanent place of residence
Other occupation	Person employed for pay or income in any occupation that is **not** included in the options listed above
Retired	Person who was retired during the 12 months before the TB diagnostic evaluation
Unemployed	Person **not** employed during the 12 months before the TB diagnostic evaluation
Not seeking employment	Person not seeking employment, such as infant, child, student, homemaker, person receiving permanent disability benefits, or person who was institutionalized
Unknown	Person whose employment status is **not** known

Examples: Health Care Worker

Includes full time, part-time, temporary, or contract staff. Examples include:

- Physicians
- Nurses
- Health Aides
- Dental workers
- Health Technicians
- Staff in laboratories and morgues
- Emergency medical personnel
- Students
- Persons who deliver health care in the community (e.g., public health nurse, visiting nurse, outreach worker)
- Persons not involved directly in patient care, but potentially at risk for occupational exposure (e.g., volunteers; outreach workers; dietary/nutritional, housekeeping, maintenance, clerical, janitorial, administrative and supervisory staff)

Examples: Correctional Facility Employee

- Federal or state prison
- Local jail
- Juvenile correctional facility
- Immigration and Customs Enforcement (ICE) detention center or other correctional facility (See **Resident of Correctional Facility** [item 28].)
- Paid or unpaid persons working in correctional facilities, with potential for exposure to *M. tuberculosis* complex (e.g., volunteers; outreach workers; dietary/nutritional, housekeeping, maintenance, clerical, and janitorial staff)

Examples: Migrant/Seasonal Worker

- Migratory agricultural worker
- Seasonal agricultural worker
- Migrant factory worker
- Migrant construction worker
- Migrant service industry worker
- Migrant sporting worker (e.g., horse racing, dog racing)

Comment: Unemployed

Select **Unemployed** if a person not included in the preceding list was unemployed for most of the past 12 months. Do not select this option for a person who was unemployed for a short time (e.g., 1 week during the past 12 months).

Note: Update this item if additional information is obtained during the course of treatment.

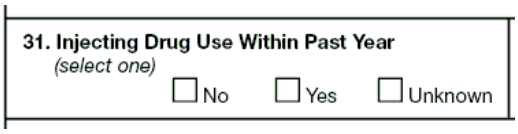
Exercise
30. Primary Occupation Within Past Year

What is the Primary Occupation Within the Past Year?
(Choose the one best answer by matching the **Primary Occupation Within the Past Year** with the patient. Write the letter for the occupation on the line next to the question number.)

	Patient	
E___	**30.1**	Vince completed 30 years of service with the U.S. Army 15 months ago and now spends all of his time working in his garden.
G___	**30.2**	Joe, a full time student, does not have a job and is not looking for work.
H___	**30.3**	Isabella refused to disclose where she worked.
C___	**30.4**	Roberto picks tomatoes at Lane Produce Company during the summer season.
A___	**30.5**	Florence is a nurse at the local correctional jail.
D___	**30.6**	Billy Bob is a truck driver for Texaco.
B___	**30.7**	Marybelle is a cook at the juvenile detention center.
F___	**30.8**	Andy has been without a job for the past year.
A___	**30.9**	Debbie is a dietitian at Grady Hospital.

Primary Occupation within the Past Year
A. Health care worker
B. Correctional facility employee
C. Migrant/seasonal worker
D. Other occupation
E. Retired
F. Unemployed
G. Not seeking employment
H. Unknown

31. Injecting Drug Use Within Past Year



Primary Purpose: Surveillance. Data are used to determine the extent to which injecting drug use is associated with TB.

Option *(select one)*	Description
No	Patient has **not** injected drugs within the past 12 months.
Yes	Patient is known to have injected drugs within the past 12 months
Unknown	It is **not** known whether the patient injected drugs within the past 12 months

Comment: Injecting Drug Use
Medical documentation or other indications of enrollment in a drug treatment program (e.g., methadone detoxification; methadone maintenance; outpatient, residential, or inpatient treatment, halfway house; prison or jail treatment; Narcotics Anonymous, Cocaine Anonymous, or other self-help program), medical or laboratory documentation of injection drug use (e.g., urine testing), or physical evidence (e.g., needle tracks) may be useful in answering this question. Because many patients respond negatively during the interview, it may be necessary to ask the patient about drug use at multiple visits.

Comment: Definition of Injecting Drug Use
Injecting drug use involves the use of hypodermic needles and syringes for the injection of drugs not prescribed by a health care provider. Route of administration may be intravenous, subcutaneous (e.g., skin popping), or intramuscular.

Note: Update this item if additional information is obtained during the course of treatment.

Examples: Commonly injected drugs

- Heroin and other opiates (e.g., Demerol, Dilaudid, morphine, opium)
- Cocaine (e.g., speedball)
- Methamphetamines
- Amphetamines
- Other stimulants
- Phencyclidine (PCP, also known as angel dust)
- Other hallucinogens
- Barbiturates
- Steroids
- Other hormones
- Fentanyl

Exercise
31. Injecting Drug Use Within Past Year

Case Study – Chaz

Chaz has visible needle marks on his arms and appears high, spaced-out, and incoherent. He denies ever using injectable drugs. However, his medical record shows a previous use of injectable drugs and that he was in a methadone detoxification program 11 months ago.

31.1 How would you fill out Injecting Drug Use Within Past Year for Chaz?
(circle the one best answer)

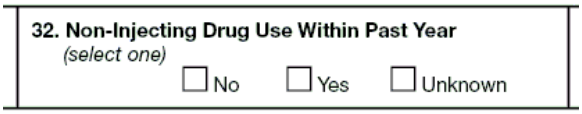
A. No

X B. Yes

C. Unknown

Note for answer: Even though Chaz denies that he injects drugs, his record shows that he was in an injecting drug detoxification program within the past year.

32. Non-Injecting Drug Use Within Past Year



Primary Purpose: Surveillance. Data are used to determine the extent to which non-injecting drug use is associated with TB.

Option *(select one)*	Description
No	Patient has **no** history of using non-injecting drugs within the past 12 months
Yes	It is known that the patient has used non-injecting drugs within the past 12 months.
Unknown	It is **not** known whether the patient used non-injecting drugs within the past 12 months.

Comment: Non-Injecting Drug Use
A history of enrollment in a drug treatment program (e.g., outpatient, residential, or inpatient treatment; halfway house; prison or jail treatment; Cocaine Anonymous or other self-help program), as well as medical or laboratory documentation of drug use (e.g., urine testing), may be useful in answering this question. Because many patients respond negatively during the interview, it may be necessary to ask the patient about drug use at multiple visits.

Comment: Definition of Non-Injecting Drug Use
Non-injecting drug use involves the use of licensed or prescription drugs or illegal drugs that were not injected and were not prescribed for the patient by a health care provider. The drugs may be ingested, inhaled, sniffed, or smoked.

Note: Update this item if additional information is obtained during the course of treatment.

Examples: Non-injecting drugs

- Heroin or other opiates (e.g., Demerol, Percocet, codeine, Dilaudid, MS Contin, nonprescription methadone)
- Cocaine (e.g., snorted) and crack (e.g., smoked)
- Ingested amphetamines (e.g., speed, uppers, bennies)
- Xanax, Ativan, Valium, or other benzodiazepams
- Phencyclidine (PCP), ketamine, LSD, or other hallucinogens
- Barbiturates
- Marijuana (e.g., pot, weed, grass, reefers), hashish
- Inhalants (e.g., nitrous [whippets] oxide, poppers, rush, huff, gasoline, spray paint, butane)
- Steroids

Note: Alcohol is **not** included as a non-injecting drug (see **Excess Alcohol Use within Past Year** [item 33]).

Exercise
32. Non-Injecting Drug Use Within Past Year

Case Study – Spider

Spider is interviewed for the RVCT on December 13, 2009. He says he completed a drug detoxification program about 14 months ago, on October 30, 2008, and has been drug-free since that time.

32.1 How would you answer Non-Injecting Drug Use Within Past Year for Spider? (circle the one best answer)

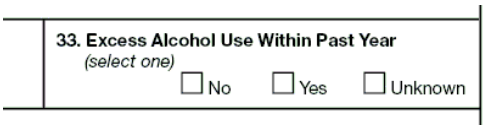
X **A.** No

B. Yes

C. Unknown

Note for answer: According to Spider, he used non-injecting drugs in the past, but not within the past 12 months. You have to take his word for this because there is no proof that he did use drugs within the past 12 months, and you do not suspect or see any evidence of drug use.

33. Excess Alcohol Use Within Past Year



Primary Purpose: Surveillance. Data are used to determine the extent to which excess alcohol use is associated with TB.

Option *(select one)*	Description
No	Patient has **not** used alcohol to excess within the past 12 months.
Yes	Patient has used alcohol to excess within the past 12 months.
Unknown	It is **not** known whether the patient used alcohol to excess within the past 12 months.

Comment:
This information is collected because the patient is in a high risk group for TB. The patient's response to this question is sought as an indicator of recent excess alcohol use. Because many patients respond negatively during the interview, it may be necessary to ask the patient, at multiple visits, about excess use.

Note: Update this item if additional information is obtained during the course of treatment.

Definition of Excess Alcohol Use: There is no standard definition. Excess alcohol use can be assessed by various methods. Examples of reliable indicators of excess alcohol use include:

- Participation in self-help programs (e.g., Alcoholics Anonymous) or alcohol treatment programs
- Medical record documentation of excess alcohol use or hospitalization for alcohol-related medical conditions (e.g., delirium tremens [DTs], pancreatitis, cirrhosis)
- More than one arrest for intoxication or drunk and disorderly behavior. This can be found by asking the patient, or contacting the local correctional facility regarding charges.

The National Household Survey on Drug Abuse defines heavy alcohol use as "five or more drinks on the same occasion on each of 5 or more days in the past 30 days." Numerous screening instruments (e.g., CAGE, AUDIT, MAST) can be helpful in identifying persons who may use alcohol to excess.

A standard drink in the United States is equal to 13.7 grams (0.6 ounces) of pure alcohol or

- 12 ounces of beer
- 8 ounces of malt liquor
- 5 ounces of wine
- 1.5 ounces or a "shot" of 80-proof distilled spirits or liquor (e.g., gin, rum, vodka, or whiskey)

Exercise
33. Excess Alcohol Use Within Past Year

Case Study – Jack Daniel

Jack Daniel comes to the clinic for daily DOT. He often appears intoxicated and smelling of alcohol. He denies using excess alcohol, but says that he might occasionally have 1 or 2 beers a day. His records indicate that he enrolled in an alcohol treatment program within the past year, but he never completed the program.

33.1 How would you answer Excess Alcohol Use Within Past Year for Jack Daniel? (circle the one best answer)

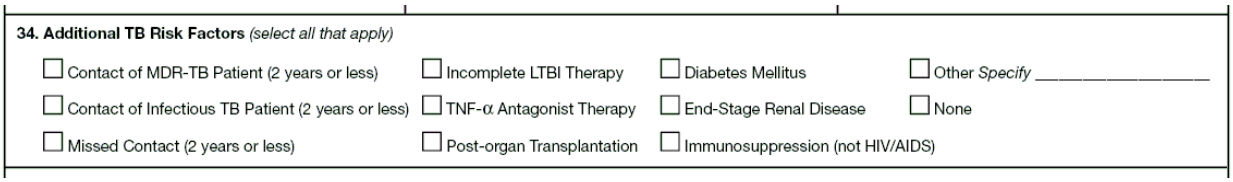
A. No

X B. Yes

C. Unknown

Note for answer: Based on your observations of Jack Daniel, you have seen evidence that he has used alcohol excessively during the past 12 months. In addition, he was in an alcohol treatment program within the past year.

34. Additional TB Risk Factors



Primary Purpose: Surveillance. Data are used to evaluate how these additional risk factors are associated with TB disease.

Select **all** additional TB risk factors that the TB patient may have. Document additional TB risk factors from the medical records or a reliable source (e.g., health care provider). Undocumented reporting (e.g., oral report from the patient or person other than a medical health care provider) is **not** acceptable.

Note: Other specific TB risk factors (e.g., occupation, HIV infection) are collected through other items of the RVCT.

Option *(select all that apply)*	Description
Contact of MDR TB patient (2 years or less)	Patient for whom the RVCT form is being completed is a contact of a patient with multidrug-resistant (MDR) TB, within 2 years or less, regardless of whether the patient with MDR TB was infectious.
Contact of infectious TB patient (2 years or less)	Patient for whom the RVCT form is being completed is a contact of an infectious TB patient within 2 years or less.
Missed contact (2 years or less)	Patient for whom the RVCT form is being completed is a contact of a known TB patient, but was not evaluated or diagnosed with LTBI or TB at that time (within 2 years or less of current diagnosis).
Incomplete LTBI treatment	Patient had a previous diagnosis of latent TB infection (LTBI) and did **not** complete treatment for LTBI.
Tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-α) antagonist therapy	Patient had recently received, or was receiving, TNF-α antagonist therapy at the time of TB diagnosis.
Post-organ transplantation	Patient has received a solid organ transplant (e.g., kidney, heart).
Diabetes mellitus	Patient has a diagnosis of diabetes mellitus (Type I or Type II) either before or at the time of TB diagnosis.
End-stage renal disease	Patient had end-stage renal disease or chronic renal failure at the time of TB diagnosis.

Immunosuppression	Patient had immunosuppression due to either a medical condition or medication, such as hematologic or reticuloendothelial malignancies (e.g., leukemia, Hodgkin's lymphoma, carcinoma of the head or neck), or immunosuppressive therapy, such as prolonged use of high-dose adrenocorticosteriods (e.g., prednisone).
Other	Patient had a risk factor **not** included in the preceding choices (e.g., undernutrition due to intestinal bypass surgery for obesity, gastrectomy, jejunoileal bypass, chronic malabsorption syndromes; silicosis; travel to a TB-endemic country).
None	No TB risk factors could be identified.

Comments: Contact of MDR TB Patient

- MDR TB is defined as resistance to at least isoniazid and rifampin.

- If a patient with MDR TB was the only known contact for the patient for whom you are completing the RVCT, select **Contact of MDR TB Patient** and do **not** select **Contact of Infectious TB Patient**. The association between the TB patients may have been found through investigation (e.g., a formal contact investigation) or identified as an incidental finding.

- The contact with the patient with MDR TB must have been within the last 2 years.

- If the patient with MDR TB has an RVCT number, enter that number as the **Linking State Case Number** (item 3), and enter reason 2 - Epidemiologically Linked Case.

Comments: Contact of Infectious TB Patient

- If the infectious TB patient is known to have had MDR TB, and the TB patient for whom the RVCT form is being completed was not a contact of any other infectious TB patient, select only **Contact of MDR TB Patient** (do **not** select **Contact of Infectious TB Patient**).

- The association between the TB patients may have been found through investigation (e.g., a formal contact investigation) or as an incidental finding. The contact with an infectious TB patient must have been within the last 2 years.

- If the infectious TB patient has an RVCT number, enter that number as the **Linking State Case Number** (item 3), and enter reason 2 - Epidemiologically Linked Case

Comment: Missed Contact

The contact must have been within the last 2 years. Do **not** select this option for TB patients identified as having TB disease during, or as a result of, a contact investigation: such patients are **not** missed contacts. Here, the intention is to record information about patients whose TB could have been prevented if they had been identified before developing TB disease.

Comment: Incomplete LTBI Treatment

The intention is to record information about a patient who started treatment for LTBI. However, the patient did not complete a full course of treatment.

Comment: Tumor Necrosis Factor-alpha (TNF-α) Antagonist Therapy
The Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has approved TNF-α antagonist therapy for treatment of rheumatoid arthritis and other selected autoimmune diseases. The FDA has also recently determined that TB disease is a potential adverse reaction to treatment with TNF-α antagonists. The three TNF-α antagonists currently approved by the FDA are infliximab (Remicade®), etanercept (Enbrel®), and adalimumab (Humira®).

Comments: Immunosuppression

- If the TB patient has diabetes mellitus or end-stage renal disease, check **Diabetes Mellitus** or **End-Stage Renal Disease** or both (do **not** select **Immunosuppression** unless the patient has another immunosuppressive condition).

- If the patient is infected with HIV, complete **HIV Status at Time of Diagnosis** (item 26) (do **not** select **Immunosuppressio**n unless the patient has another immunosuppressive condition).

Comments: Other
Do **not** include risk factors identified in items 27–33:

- **Being homeless within past year** (item 27)
- Residence status at diagnosis
    - **Correctional facility** (item 28)
    - **Long-term care facility** (item 29)
- **Primary occupation within past year** (item 30)
- **Drug or excess alcohol use within past year** (items 31–33)

On the line labeled ***Specify***, write comments regarding **Other** reasons.

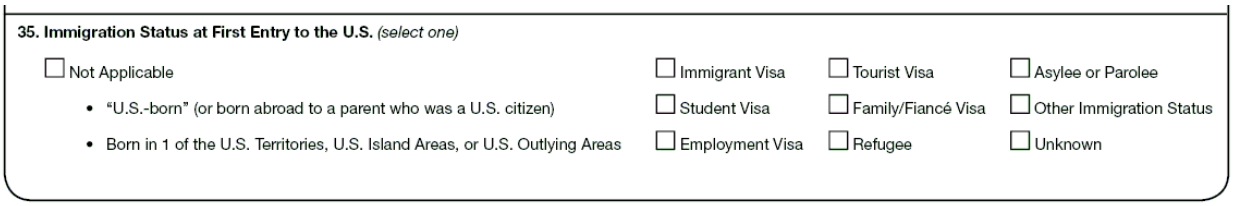
Exercise
34. Additional TB Risk Factors

What are the Additional Risk Factors for the following patients?
(Choose the one best answer by matching the **additional risk factor** with the patient. Write the letter for the additional risk factor on the line next to the question number.)

	Patient	
E___	**34.1**	Ralph has rheumatoid arthritis and has been receiving tumor necrosis factor-alpha antagonist therapy.
A___	**34.2**	Maddox works at the local market where he is exposed to a co-worker who has MDR TB. Two weeks later Maddox is contacted by the health department, and they determine that he has active TB.
F___	**34.3**	Rema has a kidney transplant in January 2009 and is diagnosed with TB disease 2 months later in March.
I___	**34.4**	Luella is diagnosed with TB disease in 2010 while being treated for leukemia.
D___	**34.5**	Gloria starts LTBI therapy in November 2008, but stops taking the medication in late January 2009.
B___	**34.6**	Diego lives with his brother, who is diagnosed with pulmonary TB disease in March 2009. Three months later, Diego is also diagnosed with TB disease.
G___	**34.7**	In July 2009, Debbie, who has diabetes, is diagnosed with TB disease during a routine physical.
C___	**34.8**	Marjorie works as a substitute teacher at Dallas High School during the month of April 2009. That same month, there is an outbreak of TB at the high school, but Marjorie does not know about that situation, even though some of the students who have TB are in her class. In May she moves to Denver and is diagnosed with TB disease in June.

Additional Risk Factor	
A.	Contact of MDR TB patient
B.	Contact of infectious TB patient
C.	Missed contact
D.	Incomplete LTBI therapy
E.	TNF-α Antagonist Therapy
F.	Post-organ transplantation
G.	Diabetes mellitus
H.	End-stage renal disease
I.	Immunosuppression (not HIV/AIDS)
J.	Other
K.	None

35. Immigration Status at First Entry to the U.S.


35. Immigration Status at First Entry to the U.S. *(select one)*

☐ Not Applicable
- "U.S.-born" (or born abroad to a parent who was a U.S. citizen)
- Born in 1 of the U.S. Territories, U.S. Island Areas, or U.S. Outlying Areas

☐ Immigrant Visa ☐ Tourist Visa ☐ Asylee or Parolee
☐ Student Visa ☐ Family/Fiancé Visa ☐ Other Immigration Status
☐ Employment Visa ☐ Refugee ☐ Unknown

Primary Purpose: Surveillance. Data are used to observe the association between immigration status and TB.

Option	Description

Not applicable	**Patient was**
	
	• **"U.S.-born"**
	  ○ Born in 1 of the 50 states or the District of Columbia
	  or
	  ○ Born abroad to a parent who was a U.S. citizen (e.g., born on a military installation)
	  (See Item 12 for complete instructions on "U.S.-born")
	
	• **Born in 1 of the U.S. Territories, U.S. Island Areas, or U.S. Outlying Areas**
	  ○ American Samoa, Federated States of Micronesia, Republic of the Marshall Islands, Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, Republic of Palau, Guam, Puerto Rico, or the U.S. Virgin Islands

If you did **not** select **Not Applicable,** select one option to indicate the patient's immigration status at first entry to the United States.

Note: If the patient had a visa at first entry to the United States, specify the type of visa. Oral information from a reliable source is acceptable.

There are 2 main types of legal immigration status: permanent (immigrants) and nonimmigrant (persons with a visa issued for specific purpose and period).

1. Permanent residents (immigrants) are issued an alien resident card (i.e., green card) and should carry this card with them.

2. Nonimmigrants with visas (e.g., student, tourist, employment, V visa, K visa) should be aware of their visa type, which is stated in their passport (I-94 arrival document stapled in passport).

Refugees are separate from the 2 main categories above: they should have an arrival document (I-94) showing their status as refugees and they should carry this card with them.

Option *(select one)*	Description
Immigrant visa	For foreign-born TB patients who first entered the United States with permanent resident status (immigrants). For foreign-born pediatric TB patients who are adopted by U.S. citizens, the patients enter the U.S. on an immigrant visa.
Student visa	For foreign-born TB patients who first entered the United States with a student visa. This is a nonimmigrant visa and is obtained by an alien coming to the United States for a specific period to pursue a full course of study in an approved institution.
Employment visa	For foreign-born patients who first entered the United States with a nonimmigrant employment visa (an alien coming to the United States to work for a specific period). There are many categories of nonimmigrant employment visas (category depends upon the type of work).
Tourist visa	For foreign-born TB patients who first entered the United States for a specific period for business or pleasure. This is a nonimmigrant visa.
Family/ fiancé visa	For foreign-born TB patients who first entered the United States with a V visa or a K visa.
Refugee	For foreign-born TB patients who first entered the United States as refugees.
Asylee or parolee	For foreign-born patients who first entered the United States seeking asylum or who are parolees.
Other immigration status	For foreign-born TB patients who first entered the United States with a status that is **not** Immigrant, Refugee, Asylee, Parolee, Student, Tourist, Employment, with a V visa or a K visa, and whose status is **not** Unknown. This includes foreign-born persons who were not required to obtain a visa (e.g., foreign-born visitors from specific countries, such as Canada, that are part of the U.S. visa waiver program and thus are not required to obtain visas if visiting the United States for short periods [e.g., ≤90 days]) or those who entered the United States with no official immigration status (e.g., they were "undocumented").

Unknown	For jurisdictions with directives or policies that forbid asking TB patients their immigration status
	• Foreign-born TB patients who
	  ○ Do not know their immigration status at first entry to the United States
	  ○ May have had a visa at entry to the United States, but the type of visa is unknown
	• Patients who refuse to respond

Note: For jurisdictions with directives or policies that forbid asking TB patients their immigration status, please check **Unknown.**

Comments: Family/Fiancé Visa

- The V visa (in the nonimmigrant category) allows the spouse or child of a U.S. legal permanent resident to live and work in the United States.

- The K visa (in the nonimmigrant category) allows the fiancé of a U.S. citizen to enter the United States for a specific period and specifically for the purpose of marriage.

Comment: Refugee

A refugee is a foreign-born person who is in a country other than his or her country of nationality and who is unable or unwilling to return to that country because of persecution or a well-founded fear of persecution.

Comments: Asylee and Parolee

An asylee is a foreign-born person in the United States who is unable or unwilling to return to his or her country of nationality because of persecution or a well-founded fear of persecution. An asylee meets the same criteria as those for a refugee; the only difference is the person's location at the time of application—the potential asylee is in the United States or applying for admission at a port of entry, and the potential refugee is outside the United States.

A parolee is a foreign-born person allowed to enter the United States for urgent humanitarian reasons or because entry is determined to be of significant public benefit.

Comment: Born in 1 of the U.S. Territories, U.S. Island Areas, or U.S. Outlying Areas (American Samoa, Federated States of Micronesia, Republic of the Marshall Islands, Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, Republic of Palau, Guam, Puerto Rico, or the U.S. Virgin Islands)

Example: For born in 1 of the U.S. Territories, U.S. Island Areas, or U.S. Outlying Areas select not applicable for

- Entering the United States
  or
- Entering one of the other U.S. Territories, U.S. Island Areas, or U.S. Outlying Areas

Exercise
35. Immigration Status at First Entry to the U.S.

What is the Immigration Status at First Entry to the United States for the following patients? (Choose the one best answer by matching the **Immigration Status at First Entry into the U.S.** with the patient. Write the letter for the Immigration Status on the line next to the question number.)

		Patient
E___	**35.1**	Katrina, a law student from the Ukraine, visited Disney World and interviewed for a job at the Thayer Law Firm.
H___	**35.2**	Graciano, a Cuban doctor, escaped to Miami from Havana and is applying for a U.S. visa. He will be persecuted if he returns to Cuba.
C___	**35.3**	Pratibha was born in India and is attending a PhD program in Public Health Surveillance at Harvard.
D___	**35.4**	Wong, a Chinese software designer, is visiting the United States to work for Microsoft for 3 months.
B___	**35.5**	Ali was born in Saudi Arabia and entered the United States with permanent resident status.
G___	**35.6**	Anshuman, a bilingual interpreter for the U.S. military, is a refugee from Pakistan. He cannot return to his native Pakistan because of fear of persecution.
A___	**35.7**	Svetlana was born in Moscow. Her father is a U.S. citizen and her mother is a Russian citizen.
F___	**35.8**	Sabeen, an Iraqi secretary, met her fiancé Jim while he served in the Gulf War. She is coming to the United States to meet his parents and marry him.
J___	**35.9**	Boris refuses to define his status.
I___	**35.10**	Jose, a Mexican migrant farmer, illegally entered the United States through Big Bend, Texas.

Immigration Status

A. Not applicable (U.S.-born)

B. Immigrant visa

C. Student visa

D. Employment visa

E. Tourist visa

F. Family/fiancé visa

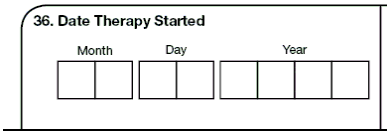
G. Refugee

H. Asylee or parolee

I. Other immigration status

J. Unknown

36. Date Therapy Started



Primary Purpose: Programmatic function. Data are used for calculating program management indicators.

	Description	Comment
Month, day, and year (e.g., 01/17/2009)	Date the patient began **multidrug therapy** for **TB disease** or **suspected TB disease**	This may be one of several dates, ideally, when the patient first ingested medication if documented in a medical record. If the month or day is unknown, enter 99 as the default value (e.g., 01/99/2009).

Date Therapy Started is the month, day, and year the patient began multidrug therapy for TB disease or suspected TB disease. Patient history without medical documentation is not acceptable and should be entered as unknown. Enter a date according to the following chart:

Hierarchy of Determining Date Therapy Started

(Base decision on documented evidence)

Preferred Date Therapy Started
If this date is not known choose the next alternative

Date
Patient First Ingested Medication
if **documented** in a medical record, such as hospital, **or** clinic, **or** directly observed therapy (DOT) record (preferred)

↓

Next Alternative Date Therapy Started
If this date is not known choose the last alternative

Date
Medication was First Dispensed to the Patient
as **documented** by medical or pharmacy record

↓

Last Alternative Date Therapy Started

Date
Medication was First Prescribed to the Patient by the Health Care Provider
as **documented** by medical or pharmacy record

Exercise
36. Date Therapy Started

Case Study – Thelma

On February 14, 2010, Thelma is diagnosed with TB. That same day her physician prescribes the initial standard four-drug regimen of isoniazid, rifampin, pyrazinamide, and ethambutol. On February 15, Thelma picks up the drugs from the pharmacy. Her medical records indicate that Thelma is not sure when she started taking the drugs. She thinks maybe it was on February 17, February 21, or even later.

36.1 Which date is the Date Therapy was Started?
(circle the one best answer)

A. February 14, 2010

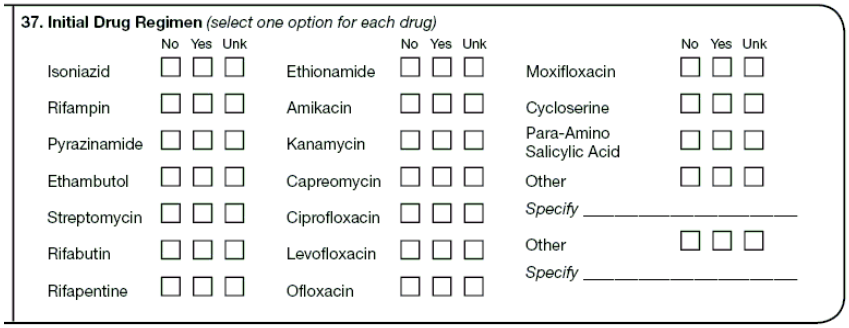
X B. February 15, 2010

C. February 17, 2010

D. February 21, 2010

Note for answer: The documented date that the patient first ingests the drugs is the date that is preferred. But, in this case study, Thelma was not sure about the date she started taking the drugs, so the next documented date would be the date that the pharmacy dispensed the drug, which in this case was February 15.

37. Initial Drug Regimen



Primary Purpose: Programmatic function. Data are used for calculating program management indicators.

Select an option for **each** drug listed.

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
No	Drug is known to **not** be part of the initial regimen.	
Yes	Drug is known to be part of the initial regimen. **Yes** indicates that the drug was **initially** prescribed for treatment of TB disease and was taken for at least 2 weeks. The 2-week requirement should eliminate most of the record updates necessitated by changes in regimen after treatment has begun.	If you **cannot** determine the initial regimen of at least 2 weeks' duration, select **Yes** for the initial drugs known to have been prescribed.
Unknown	It is **not** known whether the drug was part of the initial regimen.	

Comment: Combination drugs
For combination drugs, select **Yes** for each drug that is a component of the combination drug.
For example

- Rifamate is a combination of izoniazid and rifampin
- Rifater is a combination of izoniazid, rifampin, and pyrazinamide

Example: Combination drugs
For Rifamate, select **Yes** for isoniazid and **Yes** for rifampin.

Note: For **Other**, enter only anti-TB drugs (do **not** include pyridoxine, vitamin B6).

Exercise
37. Initial Drug Regimen

Case Study – Zelda

On March 30, 2010, Zelda is diagnosed with TB. That same day, her physician prescribes the initial standard four-drug regimen of isoniazid, rifampin, pyrazinamide, and ethambutol.

What is the Initial Drug Regimen that was prescribed?

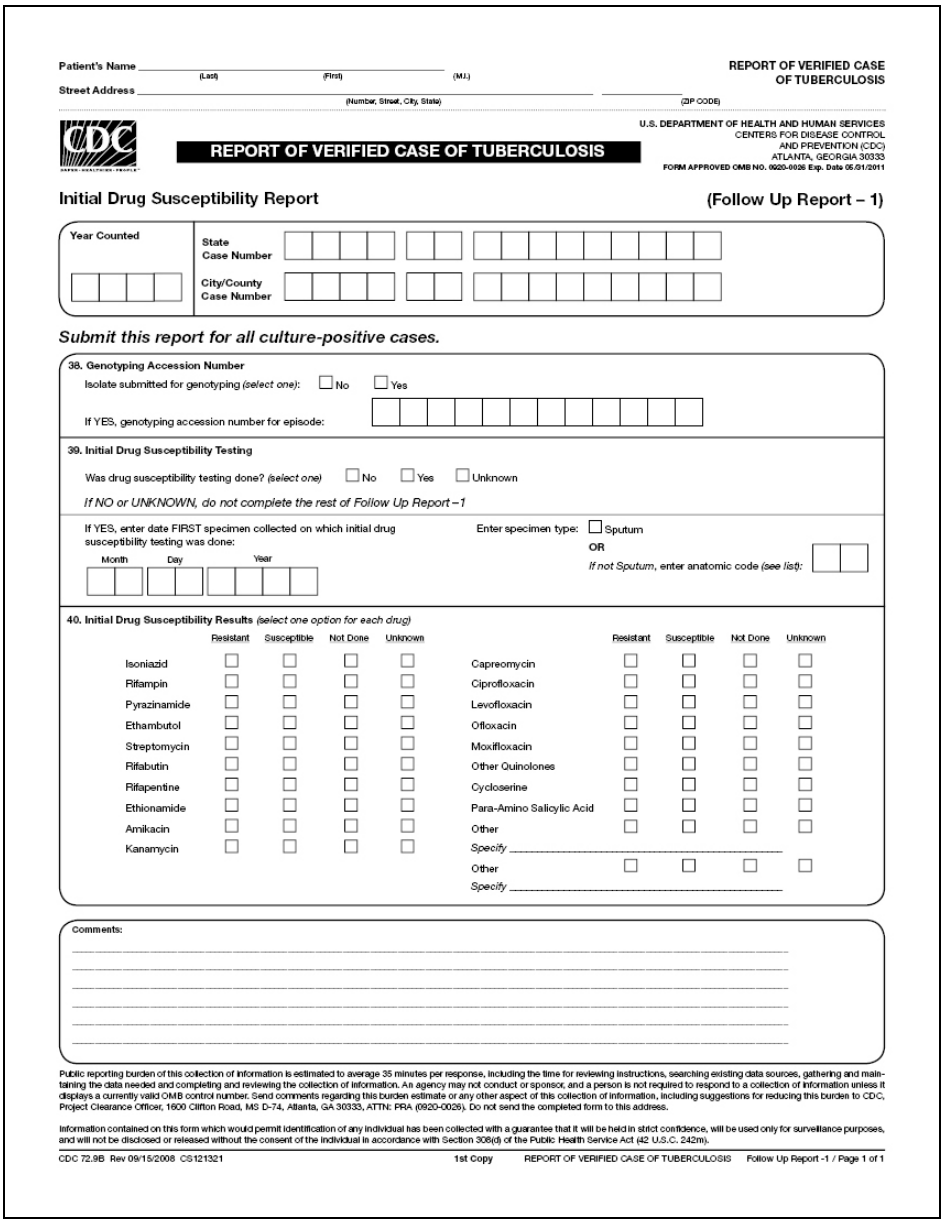
(Choose the one best answer by checking the box indicating **Initial Drug Regimen** for each drug.)

		A. No	B. Yes	C. Unknown
37.1	**Isoniazid**	□	X□	□
37.2	**Rifampin**	□	X□	□
37.3	**Pyrazinamide**	□	X□	□
37.4	**Ethambutol**	□	X□	□
37.5	**Streptomycin**	X□	□	□
37.6	**Rifabutin**	X□	□	□

Module D - Initial Drug Susceptibility Report (Follow Up Report - 1) (page 1 of 1) Items 38 – 40

Module D provides instructions and exercises for completing the Initial Drug Susceptibility Report. This page is a follow-up report to the RVCT and includes data about genotyping, as well as initial drug susceptibility testing and results.

Complete this report only for cases with positive culture results for *M. tuberculosis* complex. Complete and submit this report as soon as initial drug susceptibility results are available. Copy patient name and address from page 1 of the RVCT. The patient name and address are retained at the local level for identification purposes; they are not sent to CDC. Enter **Year Counted**, **State Case Number**, and **City/County Case Number** for data entry purposes.



Patient's Name _____ (Last) (First) (M.I.)

Street Address _____ (Number, Street, City, State) (ZIP CODE)

REPORT OF VERIFIED CASE OF TUBERCULOSIS

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES
CENTERS FOR DISEASE CONTROL AND PREVENTION (CDC)
ATLANTA, GEORGIA 30333
FORM APPROVED OMB NO. 0920-0026 Exp. Date 05/31/2011

REPORT OF VERIFIED CASE OF TUBERCULOSIS

Initial Drug Susceptibility Report (Follow Up Report – 1)

Year Counted

State Case Number

City/County Case Number

Submit this report for all culture-positive cases.

38. Genotyping Accession Number

Isolate submitted for genotyping *(select one)*: ☐ No ☐ Yes

If YES, genotyping accession number for episode:

39. Initial Drug Susceptibility Testing

Was drug susceptibility testing done? *(select one)* ☐ No ☐ Yes ☐ Unknown

If NO or UNKNOWN, do not complete the rest of Follow Up Report –1

If YES, enter date FIRST specimen collected on which initial drug susceptibility testing was done: Month Day Year

Enter specimen type: ☐ Sputum OR *If not Sputum*, enter anatomic code *(see list)*:

40. Initial Drug Susceptibility Results *(select one option for each drug)*

	Resistant	Susceptible	Not Done	Unknown
Isoniazid	☐	☐	☐	☐
Rifampin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Pyrazinamide	☐	☐	☐	☐
Ethambutol	☐	☐	☐	☐
Streptomycin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Rifabutin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Rifapentine	☐	☐	☐	☐
Ethionamide	☐	☐	☐	☐
Amikacin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Kanamycin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Capreomycin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Ciprofloxacin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Levofloxacin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Ofloxacin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Moxifloxacin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Other Quinolones	☐	☐	☐	☐
Cycloserine	☐	☐	☐	☐
Para-Amino Salicylic Acid	☐	☐	☐	☐
Other	☐	☐	☐	☐
Specify _____				
Other	☐	☐	☐	☐
Specify _____				

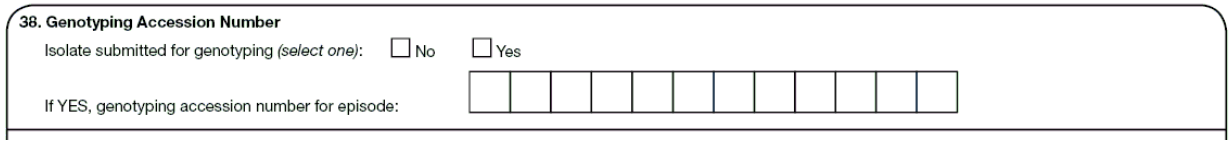
Comments:

Public reporting burden of this collection of information is estimated to average 35 minutes per response, including the time for reviewing instructions, searching existing data sources, gathering and maintaining the data needed and completing and reviewing the collection of information. An agency may not conduct or sponsor, and a person is not required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a currently valid OMB control number. Send comments regarding this burden estimate or any other aspect of this collection of information, including suggestions for reducing this burden to CDC, Project Clearance Officer, 1600 Clifton Road, MS D-74, Atlanta, GA 30333, ATTN: PRA (0920-0026). Do not send the completed form to this address.

Information contained on this form which would permit identification of any individual has been collected with a guarantee that it will be held in strict confidence, will be used only for surveillance purposes, and will not be disclosed or released without the consent of the individual in accordance with Section 306(d) of the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. 242m).

CDC 72.9B Rev 09/15/2008 CS121321 1st Copy REPORT OF VERIFIED CASE OF TUBERCULOSIS Follow Up Report -1 / Page 1 of 1

38. Genotyping Accession Number



Primary Purpose: Surveillance. Data are used to link genotyping results with RVCT data.

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
No	**No** isolate was submitted for genotyping.	**No** does not indicate that no results were received or that "untypeable" results were reported.
Yes	Isolate was submitted for genotyping, regardless of genotyping results.	

If you selected **Yes**, enter the following information.

	Description	Comment
Genotyping accession number	The genotyping accession number for the current TB episode. This number is assigned by the genotyping reference laboratory.	If multiple isolates have been submitted for one patient, please consult with your laboratorian or genotyping surveillance coordinator to determine the correct genotyping accession number for the current episode.

Comment: Genotyping accession number
In 2004, CDC established the National Tuberculosis Genotyping Service (NTGS). The goal was to genotype one *M. tuberculosis* isolate from every culture-confirmed TB case in the United States. The genotyping accession number is the number assigned by the genotyping reference laboratory. Under current contracts, the numbers are formatted in the following table.

Genotyping Accession Number

Sample Laboratories Performing Genotyping Service	Format for Genotyping Accession Number	Sample
California lab	YY (the 2-digit year), followed by L and 4 digits	05L1234
Michigan lab	YY (the 2-digit year), followed by RF and 4 digits	06RF5678
CDC lab	YY (the 2-digit year), followed by a hyphen and 6 digits	06-012345

When entering the genotyping accession number, begin at the first box and continue to fill to the right. Include all hyphens and letters. Do not add zeros in the remaining boxes (beyond the number provided by the reference lab).

Exercise
38. Genotyping Accession Number

Case study - Jenna

Jenna is diagnosed with culture-positive TB in Hawaii in 2009. After the initial diagnosis, her isolate is sent to the California reference laboratory as part of universal TB strain genotyping. The Excel spreadsheet that came back from the laboratory looks like this:

09L9564 09AF0254 777777777760731 222325153325 PCR00208

38.1 What should be entered for the Genotyping Accession Number?
(circle the one best answer)

X A.

0	9	L	9	5	6	4					

B.

0	9	A	F	0	2	5	4				

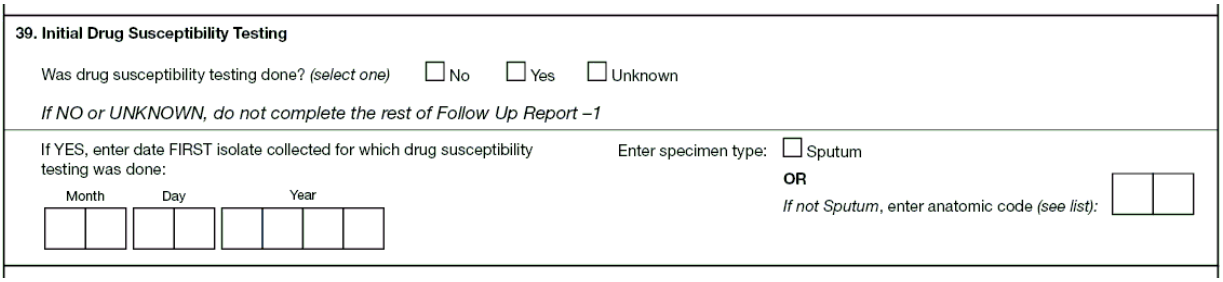
C.

P	C	R	0	0	2	0	8				

Note for answer: There are 12 spaces for genotyping accession number. Instructions are to complete the number beginning at the left-most box. Do not add zeros to finish filling the boxes. This genotyping accession number is from the California laboratory because it has the 2-digit year (09) followed by L, then 4 digits. If the genotyping accession number is from the CDC laboratory, it will have a hyphen after the 2-digit year; this hyphen should also be entered into a box as part of the genotyping accession number. If the genotyping accession number is from the Michigan laboratory, it will have RF after the 2-digit year.

The last three columns above are the spoligotype, MIRU, and PCR type, respectively. The second column is not a genotyping accession number because it does not fit the numbering format of any of the three reference laboratories. RVCT users should be aware that there may be additional local, state, submitter, cluster, or other identification numbers listed on a genotyping report. RVCT users should be able to identify the genotyping accession number by becoming familiar with the format used by the NTGS laboratory serving their reporting area.

39. Initial Drug Susceptibility Testing


39. Initial Drug Susceptibility Testing

Was drug susceptibility testing done? *(select one)* ☐ No ☐ Yes ☐ Unknown

If NO or UNKNOWN, do not complete the rest of Follow Up Report –1

If YES, enter date FIRST isolate collected for which drug susceptibility testing was done:

Month Day Year

Enter specimen type: ☐ Sputum

OR

If not Sputum, enter anatomic code *(see list)*:

Primary Purpose: Programmatic function. Data are used to monitor the rate of susceptibility testing and calculate indicators.

Option *(select one)*	Description
No	Initial drug susceptibility testing was **not** performed.
Yes	An initial isolate was obtained, submitted for drug susceptibility testing, and results are available.
Unknown	It is **not** known whether initial drug susceptibility testing was performed.

Comments:
If drug susceptibility testing was performed on multiple initial isolates, select one of the following (there is no hierarchy for selecting these options):

- The isolate associated with the primary, or major, site of disease
  or
- The initial isolate from the major site of disease that yields the best or most information concerning drug susceptibility results
  or
- The initial culture-positive isolate.

Note: If the answer is **No** or **Unknown**, do **not** complete the remainder of this form (Initial Drug Susceptibility Report [Follow Up Report–1]).

If you selected **Yes**, enter the following information.

	Description	Comment
Date first specimen for which drug susceptibility testing was done	Month, day, and year the **first** specimen was **collected** (e.g., 01/17/2009)	If the month or day is unknown, enter 99 as the default value (e.g., 01/99/2009).

Select the **specimen type** on which initial drug susceptibility testing was performed.

Option *(select one)*	Description
Sputum	
Not sputum	Enter appropriate anatomic code (e.g., 30 for pericarditis) from the Anatomic Code list (see Appendix C – Anatomic Codes).

Note: For the purposes of the RVCT training materials, use the codes listed in the appendices. Some software programs used to enter data on the RVCT may **NOT** use the codes listed in the appendices. For example, the Anatomic Codes may be a drop-down item, where you choose the actual site rather than enter a code. For more information, see instructions for the software you use.

Exercise
39. Initial Drug Susceptibility Testing

Case study – Esmeralda

On July 3, 2009, Esmeralda is suspected of having TB. That same day a urine specimen is collected and she starts treatment. On July 29 the result of the urine specimen indicates that it is culture positive for TB. Drug susceptibility results on the urine specimen are received on August 8.

Three consecutive sputum specimens are collected from Esmeralda on July 5, 6, and 7. On August 13, the results indicate that all three specimens are smear negative and culture positive for TB. Drug susceptibility testing performed on the July 5 sputum specimen is reported on August 21 and is identical to the drug susceptibility testing results from the urine specimen.

39.1 What is the date of the first specimen on which drug susceptibility testing was done?
(circle the one best answer)

X **A.** July 3, 2009

B. July 5, 2009

C. August 8, 2009

D. August 13, 2009

E. August 21, 2009

39.2 What should be entered for specimen type?
(circle the one best answer)

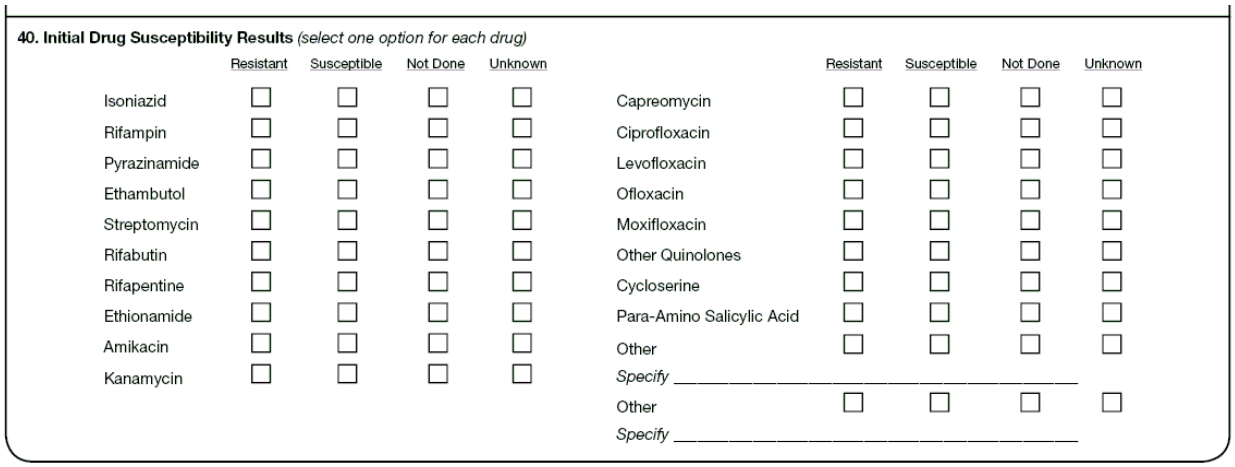
A. Sputum

X **B.** Anatomic Code - Urine (69)

C. Both A and B are correct

Note for answer: Item 39 refers to the first culture positive specimen on which drug susceptibility testing was performed, regardless of which site it was taken from (e.g., it does not have to be the major site of disease). Because the urine culture grew before the sputum cultures, drug susceptibility testing was performed on the urine specimen. Therefore the urine is the **first specimen** on which drug susceptibility testing was performed. That is why July 3 is the answer for 39.1, and the specimen type is urine for 39.2. If the July 5 sputum culture had grown first, initial drug susceptibility testing would have been performed on that specimen; July 5 would have been the answer for 39.1, and sputum would have been the answer for 39.2. Even though the major site of disease may be pulmonary, this question is asking for the **first specimen** on which drug susceptibility testing was performed.

40. Initial Drug Susceptibility Results



40. Initial Drug Susceptibility Results *(select one option for each drug)*

	Resistant	Susceptible	Not Done	Unknown
Isoniazid	☐	☐	☐	☐
Rifampin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Pyrazinamide	☐	☐	☐	☐
Ethambutol	☐	☐	☐	☐
Streptomycin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Rifabutin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Rifapentine	☐	☐	☐	☐
Ethionamide	☐	☐	☐	☐
Amikacin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Kanamycin	☐	☐	☐	☐

	Resistant	Susceptible	Not Done	Unknown
Capreomycin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Ciprofloxacin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Levofloxacin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Ofloxacin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Moxifloxacin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Other Quinolones	☐	☐	☐	☐
Cycloserine	☐	☐	☐	☐
Para-Amino Salicylic Acid	☐	☐	☐	☐
Other	☐	☐	☐	☐
Specify _____				
Other	☐	☐	☐	☐
Specify _____				

Primary Purpose: Programmatic function. Data are used to monitor trends in drug resistance and calculate indicators.

Record the results of initial drug susceptibility testing on the first specimen on which drug susceptibility testing was performed. If drug susceptibility testing was performed on multiple initial isolates, select one of the following (there is no hierarchy for selecting these options):

- The isolate associated with the primary, or major, site of disease
  or
- The initial isolate from the major site of disease that yields the best or most information concerning drug susceptibility results
  or
- The initial culture-positive isolate.

Note: Report results from conventional drug susceptibility tests (DST) only. Do **not** report rapid DST test results (molecular beacon, molecular line probe assays, or other molecular tests).

First-line and Second-line Anti-TB Drugs

First-line Drugs	Second-line Drugs			
• Isoniazid • Rifampin • Pyrazinamide • Ethambutol	• Streptomycin • Rifabutin • Rifapentine • Ethionamide	• Amikacin • Kanamycin • Capreomycin • Ciprofloxacin	• Levofloxacin • Ofloxacin • Moxifloxacin • Other Quinolones	• Cycloserine • Para-Amino Salicylic Acid • Other

Comments:

- If drug susceptibility testing for first-line anti-TB drugs was performed on a specific specimen and resistance to one or more drugs was noted, thus prompting drug susceptibility testing for second-line anti-TB drugs, this testing should be done on the same specimen. Enter both first- and second-line testing results for this variable, even if the results are received at different times.

- If the same specimen is used for drug susceptibility testing for second-line anti-TB drugs after testing for first-line anti-TB drugs, update these variables when results become available.

- If a second specimen is needed for drug susceptibility testing for second-line anti-TB drugs, the second specimen should be collected as soon as possible after the first specimen was collected for drug susceptibility testing for first-line anti-TB drugs (i.e., interval between specimen collections should be less than 4 weeks). Update these variables when results become available.

For **each** drug listed, select one of the options listed below.

Option *(select one)*	Description
Resistant	Drug has **any** degree of resistance (even partial resistance, resistance at a low concentration of the drug, or a result other than completely susceptible).
Susceptible	Select only if completely susceptible.
Not done	Susceptibility testing was **not** done for this drug.
Unknown	It is **not** known whether the test was performed. **or** Results are **not** available or result is not known for a reason other than pending results.

Note: Other Quinolones excludes ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, and ofloxacin because they are listed on the form.

Use the space at the bottom of the form to write comments (e.g., name of the laboratory that performed drug susceptibility testing) regarding the case of TB reported on this form (Initial Drug Susceptibility Report).

If radiometric and conventional results on the same specimen differ (e.g., one is resistant, the other is susceptible), discuss the results with your state TB laboratory director and complete the item accordingly.

Comment: Combination drugs
For combination drugs (e.g., Rifamate, Rifater), select **Yes** for each drug that is a component of the combination drug.
For example

- Rifamate is a combination of izoniazid and rifampin
- Rifater is a combination of izoniazid, rifampin and pyrazinamide

Example: Rifamate
For Rifamate, select **Yes** for isoniazid and **Yes** for rifampin.

Note: For **Other**, enter only anti-TB drugs (do **not** include pyridoxine, [vitamin B6]).

Exercise
40. Initial Drug Susceptibility Results

Case study – Esmeralda (continued from Item 39)

The following first-line drug susceptibility test results for the isolate of *M. tuberculosis* complex are received on August 21 from laboratory #1. The second-line laboratory results are received on September 19 from laboratory #2. The laboratory results are indicated in the table below.

Results from Laboratory #1	Results from Laboratory #2
• **INH** – Low-level resistance • **Rifampin** – No resistance • **Pyrazinamide** – No resistance • **Ethambutol** – Resistance • **Streptomycin** – Testing not done	• **Rifabutin** – Resistance • **Rifapentine** – Testing not done • **Ethionamide** – Not known if test was done • **Amikacin** – Susceptible • **Kanamycin** – Testing not done

What are the Initial Drug Susceptibility Results entered on the RVCT?
(Choose the one best answer by checking the box indicating **Initial Drug Susceptibility Results** from the laboratory for each drug.)

		A. Resistant	B. Susceptible	C. Not Done	D. Unknown
40.1	**Isoniazid**	X□	□	□	□
40.2	**Rifampin**	□	X□	□	□
40.3	**Pyrazinamide**	□	X□	□	□
40.4	**Ethambutol**	X□	□	□	□
40.5	**Streptomycin**	□	□	X□	□
40.6	**Rifabutin**	X□	□	□	□
40.7	**Rifapentine**	□	□	X□	□
40.8	**Ethionamide**	□	□	□	X□
40.9	**Amikacin**	□	X□	□	□
40.10	**Kanamycin**	□	□	X□	□

Note for answer:
40.1 Isoniazid: Any resistance is resistance, even if it is low.

40.8 Ethionamide: It is not known if the test was done, so Unknown should be selected. Some laboratories report no resistance, which means susceptible.

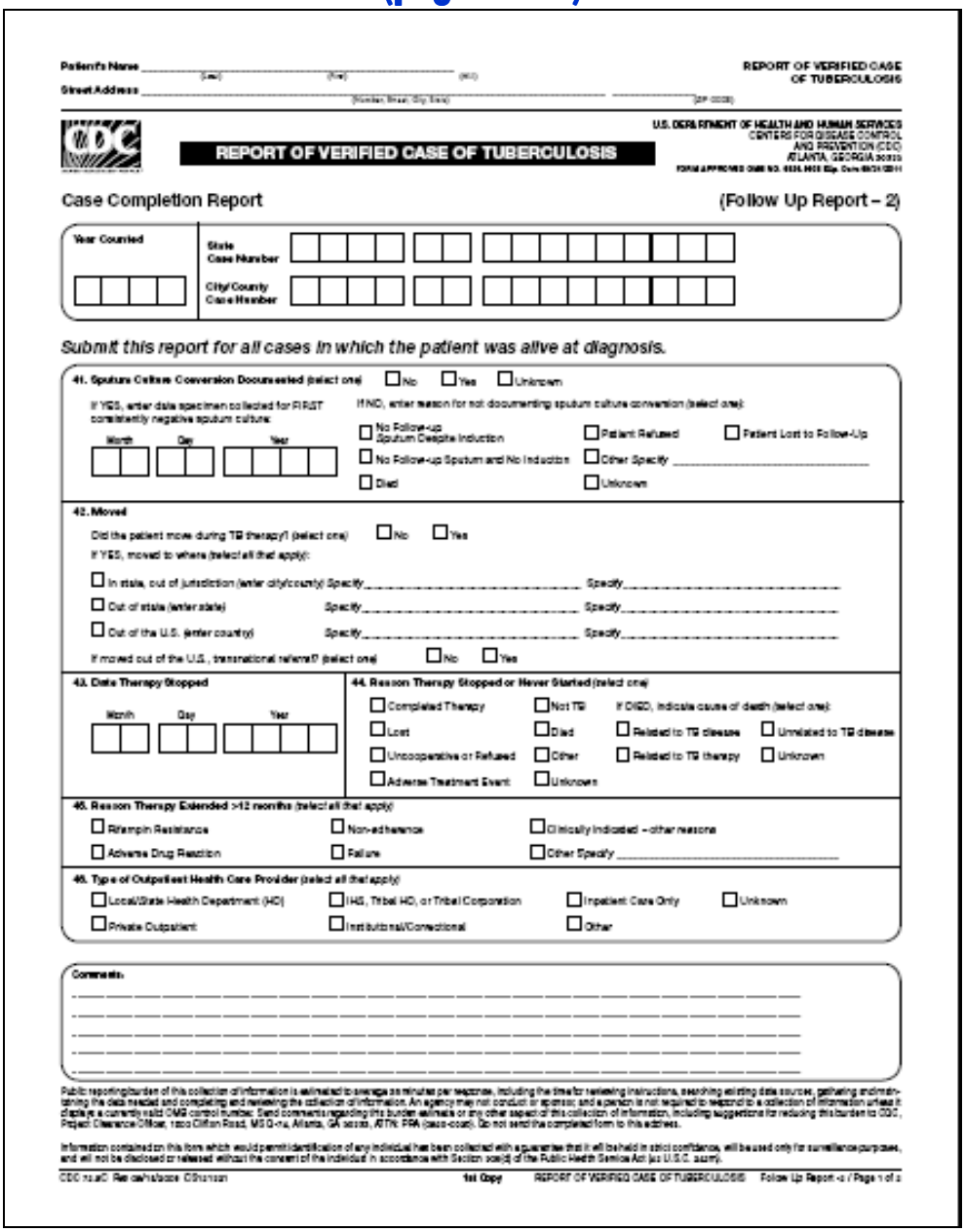
Module E - Case Completion Report (Follow Up Report – 2)
Items 41 – 49

Module E provides instructions and exercises for completing the Case Completion Report. This 2 page report includes data about treatment outcomes, provider status, and if the patient moved during treatment.

Complete this form for all patients who were alive at the time of TB diagnosis. Enter data as soon as information becomes available during patient follow-up. This report should be completed when the case is closed to supervision and is due no later than 2 years after the initial RVCT.

Copy patient name and address from page 1 of the RVCT form. Patient name and address are retained at the local level for identification purposes; they are not sent to CDC. Enter **Year Counted**, **State Case Number**, and **City/County Case Number** for data entry purposes.

(page 1 of 2)



Patient's Name _____ (Last) (First) (MI)

Street Address _____ (Number, Street, City, State) (ZIP Code)

REPORT OF VERIFIED CASE OF TUBERCULOSIS

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES
CENTERS FOR DISEASE CONTROL AND PREVENTION (CDC)
ATLANTA, GEORGIA 30333

REPORT OF VERIFIED CASE OF TUBERCULOSIS

Case Completion Report (Follow Up Report – 2)

Year Counted

State Case Number

City/County Case Number

Submit this report for all cases in which the patient was alive at diagnosis.

41. Sputum Culture Conversion Documented (select one) ☐ No ☐ Yes ☐ Unknown

If YES, enter date specimen collected for FIRST consistently negative sputum culture: Month Day Year

If NO, enter reason for not documenting sputum culture conversion (select one):
☐ No Follow-up Sputum Despite Induction ☐ Patient Refused ☐ Patient Lost to Follow-Up
☐ No Follow-up Sputum and No Induction ☐ Other Specify _____
☐ Died ☐ Unknown

42. Moved

Did the patient move during TB therapy? (select one) ☐ No ☐ Yes

If YES, moved to where (select all that apply):
☐ In state, out of jurisdiction (enter city/county) Specify _____ Specify _____
☐ Out of state (enter state) Specify _____ Specify _____
☐ Out of the U.S. (enter country) Specify _____ Specify _____

If moved out of the U.S., transnational referral? (select one) ☐ No ☐ Yes

43. Date Therapy Stopped: Month Day Year

44. Reason Therapy Stopped or Never Started (select one)
☐ Completed Therapy ☐ Not TB If DIED, indicate cause of death (select one):
☐ Lost ☐ Died ☐ Related to TB disease ☐ Unrelated to TB disease
☐ Uncooperative or Refused ☐ Other ☐ Related to TB therapy ☐ Unknown
☐ Adverse Treatment Event ☐ Unknown

45. Reason Therapy Extended >12 months (select all that apply)
☐ Rifampin Resistance ☐ Non-adherence ☐ Clinically Indicated – other reasons
☐ Adverse Drug Reaction ☐ Failure ☐ Other Specify _____

46. Type of Outpatient Health Care Provider (select all that apply)
☐ Local/State Health Department (HD) ☐ IHS, Tribal HD, or Tribal Corporation ☐ Inpatient Care Only ☐ Unknown
☐ Private Outpatient ☐ Institutional/Correctional ☐ Other

Comments:

Public reporting burden of this collection of information is estimated to average xx minutes per response, including the time for reviewing instructions, searching existing data sources, gathering and maintaining the data needed and completing and reviewing the collection of information. An agency may not conduct or sponsor, and a person is not required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a currently valid OMB control number. Send comments regarding this burden estimate or any other aspect of this collection of information, including suggestions for reducing this burden to CDC, Project Clearance Officer, 1600 Clifton Road, MS D-74, Atlanta, GA 30333, ATTN: PRA (0920-0026). Do not send the completed form to this address.

Information contained on this form which would permit identification of any individual has been collected with a guarantee that it will be held in strict confidence, will be used only for surveillance purposes, and will not be disclosed or released without the consent of the individual in accordance with Section 308(d) of the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. 242m).

CDC 72.5/C Revised/Page (Original) 1st Copy REPORT OF VERIFIED CASE OF TUBERCULOSIS Follow Up Report – 2 / Page 1 of 2

Patient's Name _____ (Last) (First) (M.I.) State Case No. _____

REPORT OF VERIFIED CASE OF TUBERCULOSIS

REPORT OF VERIFIED CASE OF TUBERCULOSIS

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES
CENTERS FOR DISEASE CONTROL AND PREVENTION (CDC)
ATLANTA, GEORGIA 30333
FORM APPROVED OMB NO. 0920-0026 Exp. Date 05/31/2011

Case Completion Report - *Continued*

(Follow Up Report – 2)

47. Directly Observed Therapy (DOT) *(select one)*

- ☐ No, Totally Self-Administered
- ☐ Yes, Totally Directly Observed
- ☐ Yes, Both Directly Observed and Self-Administered
- ☐ Unknown

Number of weeks of directly observed therapy (DOT) ☐☐☐

48. Final Drug Susceptibility Testing

Was follow-up drug susceptibility testing done? *(select one)* ☐ No ☐ Yes ☐ Unknown

If NO or UNKNOWN, do not complete the rest of Follow Up Report –2

If YES, enter date FINAL specimen collected on which drug susceptibility testing was done:

Month ☐☐ Day ☐☐ Year ☐☐☐☐

Enter specimen type: ☐ Sputum

OR

If not Sputum, enter anatomic code *(see list)*: ☐☐

49. Final Drug Susceptibility Results *(select one option for each drug)*

	Resistant	Susceptible	Not Done	Unknown
Isoniazid	☐	☐	☐	☐
Rifampin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Pyrazinamide	☐	☐	☐	☐
Ethambutol	☐	☐	☐	☐
Streptomycin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Rifabutin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Rifapentine	☐	☐	☐	☐
Ethionamide	☐	☐	☐	☐
Amikacin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Kanamycin	☐	☐	☐	☐

	Resistant	Susceptible	Not Done	Unknown
Capreomycin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Ciprofloxacin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Levofloxacin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Ofloxacin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Moxifloxacin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Other Quinolones	☐	☐	☐	☐
Cycloserine	☐	☐	☐	☐
Para-Amino Salicylic Acid	☐	☐	☐	☐
Other	☐	☐	☐	☐
Specify _____				
Other	☐	☐	☐	☐
Specify _____				

Comments:

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

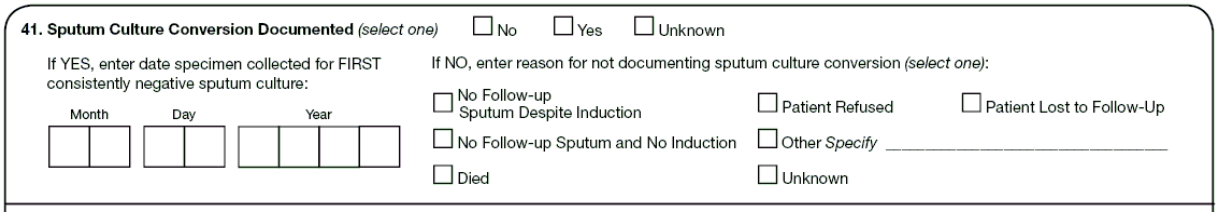
_____

_____

_____

_____

41. Sputum Culture Conversion Documented



Primary Purpose: Programmatic function. Data are used to monitor the rate of sputum culture conversion.

Provide information on sputum culture conversion only for patients with initially positive sputum cultures. Sources for documentation of sputum culture conversion include patient medical records and laboratory reports.

Note: Do NOT complete this item for patients whose –

- Sputum culture was **not** indicated as positive in **Sputum Culture** (item 18).
- Initial sputum specimen did **not** test positive and whose other pulmonary specimens (e.g., bronchoscopy fluid) tested positive in **Culture of Tissue and Other Body Fluids** (item 20).

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
No	Initial sputum specimen was culture-positive; no later specimens were culture-negative (e.g., all follow-up cultures were positive, patient could not produce sputum after therapy started, or no follow-up sputum cultures were obtained).	
Yes	Initial sputum specimen was culture-positive, followed by at least 1 negative sputum culture.	There should be **no** positive cultures after the negative culture(s).
Unknown	Results of **all** follow-up cultures are **not** known. **or** It is **not** known whether follow-up cultures were done.	

If you selected **Yes**, enter the following information.

	Description	Comment
Date specimen collected for FIRST consistently negative sputum culture	Month, day, and year when the first of the consistently negative sputum specimens was **collected** (e.g., 01/17/2009).	Complete **only** for patients who had 1 or more positive sputum cultures and who subsequently had at least 1 documented negative culture. This date should be at least 1 week after the last positive culture result. There should be no positive cultures after this date. This information may be available from medical records or laboratory reports. If the month or day is unknown, enter 99 as the default value (e.g., 01/99/2009).

If you selected **No,** select one reason for **not documenting sputum culture conversion**.

Option *(select one)*	Description
No follow-up sputum despite induction	Repeat sputum collection was attempted (including induced sputum collection), but because of clinical improvement, patient was **not** able to produce sputum.
No follow-up sputum and no induction	Induction was **not** attempted (e.g., the health care provider did not order a repeat specimen, or there were no facilities or equipment for induction).
Died	Patient died before having an opportunity to submit sputum to document whether the sputum culture had converted.
Patient lost to follow-up	Patient was lost to follow-up before having an opportunity to submit a sputum to document whether the sputum culture had converted.
Patient refused	Patient refused to provide a sputum specimen for a repeat culture.
Other *(specify)*	A reason **not** included in the above choices (e.g., treatment failed, or the patient moved outside the United States).
Unknown	It is **not** known why a repeat sputum culture was **not** obtained.

Exercise
41. Sputum Culture Conversion Documented

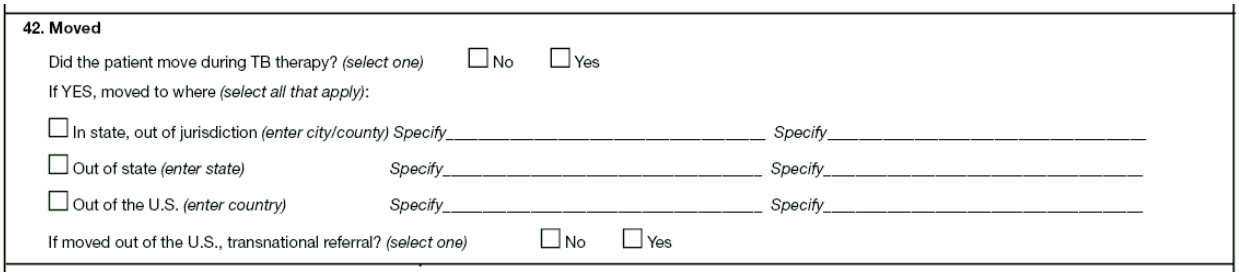
How would you document Sputum Culture Conversion for the following patients?

(Choose the one best answer by matching the **sputum culture conversion** with the patient. Write the letter for the **sputum culture conversion** on the line next to the question number.)

		Patient
D___	**41.1**	Alice has a positive sputum culture in September. After that she does **not** allow any more specimens to be taken because it hurts when she coughs.
B___	**41.2**	Gene has 3 positive sputum cultures in May. His physician does **not** order any other additional induction to collect additional sputum samples.
C___	**41.3**	Ivan has a terrible cough. On June 6 he produces a positive sputum culture. He dies on July 5 before any other specimen is collected.
F___	**41.4**	Joyce has a positive sputum culture in July. Subsequent sputum specimens are collected on September 21, 22, and 23. Her medical records indicate that on November 8 all September sputum sample cultures are negative.
A___	**41.5**	Ollie has a positive sputum culture in November, and by December his condition improves. An induction machine is unsuccessful in collecting additional sputum specimens.
E__	**41.6**	Roy has a positive sputum culture in July. He is lost to follow-up and no more sputum samples are collected.

Sputum Culture Conversion	
A	No, because no follow-up sputum despite induction
B.	No, because no follow-up sputum and no induction
C.	No, because patient died
D.	No, because patient refused
E.	No, because patient was lost to follow-up
F.	Yes

42. Moved


42. Moved

Did the patient move during TB therapy? *(select one)* ☐ No ☐ Yes

If YES, moved to where *(select all that apply)*:

☐ In state, out of jurisdiction *(enter city/county)* Specify_____ Specify_____

☐ Out of state *(enter state)* Specify_____ Specify_____

☐ Out of the U.S. *(enter country)* Specify_____ Specify_____

If moved out of the U.S., transnational referral? *(select one)* ☐ No ☐ Yes

Primary Purpose: Programmatic function. Data are used to facilitate efficient communication between TB control programs in providing continuity of care for the patient.

This variable is used to record whether the patient moved during TB therapy. The responsibility for follow-up reporting generally remains with the reporting area that initially reported the case to CDC and counted it. (For a detailed description of the responsibility for submitting follow-up reports to CDC, see the instructions for **Reporting Address for Case Counting** [item 4].)

Definition of Moved: Relocated, the result of which is a change in local health department jurisdictions.

Option *(select one)*	**Description**
No	Patient did **not** move. **or** Patient moved **within** the same local health department jurisdiction.
Yes	Patient moved to an area where **another** jurisdiction must now provide or coordinate TB care.

If you selected **Yes**, select all the options that apply to the area **to which the patient moved**.

Option *(select all that apply)*	**Description**	**COMMENT**
In-state, out-of jurisdiction *(specify)*	Patient moved within the state, but out of the local heath department jurisdiction, such as moved to different county or city. Enter the city or county health department jurisdiction to which the patient moved.	If the patient moved more than twice, enter the first 2 moves.
Out of state *(specify)*	Patient moved from 1 of the 50 U.S. states or the District of Columbia to • Another state (e.g., moved from Georgia to Alabama) **or** • A U.S. Territory, U.S. Island Area, or U.S. Outlying Area	If the patient moved more than twice, enter the first 2 moves.
	Patient moved from a U.S. Territory, U.S. Island Area, or U.S. Outlying Area to • One of the 50 U.S. states or the District of Columbia **or** • A U.S. Territory, U.S. Island Area, or U.S. Outlying Area Enter the name of the state or reporting area to which the patient moved.	

Out of the U.S. *(specify)*	Patient moved from the United States to • Another country (**other than a** U.S. Territory, U.S. Island Area, or U.S. Outlying Area)	If the patient moved more than twice, enter the first 2 moves.
	Moved from a U.S. Territory, U.S. Island Area, or U.S. Outlying Area to • Another country (**other than** the United States or another U.S. Territory, U.S. Island Area, or U.S. Outlying Area) Enter the name of the country to which the patient moved.	

If patient moved **out of the U.S.**, select one option to indicate whether a **transnational referral** was made.

Option *(select all that apply)*	Description	Comment
No	Referral was not made to a TB program or physician outside the United States.	Transnational referral includes participation in programs such as • TBNet • CureTB • Immigration and Customs Enforcement (ICE) Communication between programs is important • To help ensure case management after deportation • For completing a case management transfer and obtaining information from TB programs and/or physicians outside the United States for case completion For more information, visit the CDC/DTBE web site on the Process for Notification of TB Cases at www.cdc.gov/tb/pubs/international/default.htm
Yes	Referral was made to a TB program or physician outside the United States.	

Example: Moved within a county, parish, or within a state
A move could be within a county, parish, or even within a state provided that the same health department jurisdiction is primarily responsible for providing the TB case management, completing the RVCT, and ensuring the completion of treatment.

Example: New York City
New York State and New York City (NYC) are separate TB reporting areas that report TB cases directly to CDC. If a patient moves from New York State to NYC or vice versa, the move is considered "in-state, out of jurisdiction." Select **In-state, out-of jurisdiction.**

Example: Reporting from one of the U.S. Territories, U.S. Island Areas, or U.S. Outlying Areas
If you are reporting from one of the U.S. Territories, U.S. Island Areas, or U.S. Outlying Areas (American Samoa, Federated States of Micronesia, Guam, Republic of the Marshall Islands, Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, Republic of Palau, Puerto Rico, or U.S. Virgin Islands), select **Out of state** if a patient moves out of your reporting area to the United States or to another U.S. Territory, U.S. Island Area, or U.S. Outlying Area.

However, if a patient moves from your jurisdiction to a country other than the United States or another U.S. Territory, U.S. Island Area, or U.S. Outlying Area, select **Out of the U.S.**

Examples of Moved

Moved		Select
From	To	
Dallas County, Texas	Harris County, Texas	In-state, out-of jurisdiction
Denali Borough, Alaska	Bethel Borough, Alaska	In-state, out-of jurisdiction
Orleans Parish, Louisiana	Vernon Parish, Louisiana	In-state, out-of jurisdiction
Chuuk, Federated States of Micronesia (FSM)	Yap, FSM	In-state, out-of jurisdiction
California	Hawaii	Out of state
Washington, D.C.	Baltimore, Maryland	Out of state
California	Guam	Out of state
Guam	Palau	Out of state
Guam	Hawaii	Out of state
Chuuk, FSM	Guam	Out of state
Chuuk, FSM	California	Out of state
Puerto Rico	Florida	Out of state
Guam	China	Out of the U.S.
California	China	Out of the U.S.

Exercise
42. Moved

Case Study – Johann

Johann is diagnosed on August 30 with TB disease at the Bogalusa Medical Center in Washington Parish, Louisiana. He receives DOT and adheres to treatment. On September 30 his job requires him to relocate from his home in Bogalusa to Opelousas, Louisiana, 170 miles away. He continues TB treatment at the St. Landry Parish Health Clinic in Opelousas.

42.1 Which of the following statements is true about whether Johann moved?
(circle the one best answer)

A. No, did not move during TB therapy

X B. Yes, moved in state, out of jurisdiction

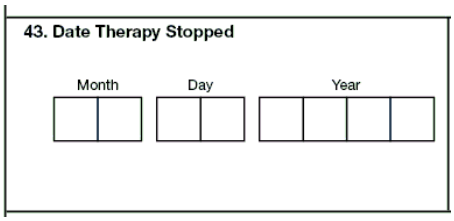
C. Yes, moved out of state

D. Yes, moved out of the U.S. and indicate no for U.S. transnational referral

E. Yes, moved out of the U.S. and indicate yes for U.S. transnational referral

Notes for answer: Moved is defined as a relocation of a patient's residence, resulting in a change in local health department jurisdiction. Therefore Johann moved in state, but out of jurisdiction.

43. Date Therapy Stopped



Primary Purpose: Programmatic function. Data are used to monitor completion of therapy within a specified time.

	Description	Comment
Month, day, and year (e.g., 01/17/2005)	Date the patient stopped taking therapy for TB disease or suspected TB disease	This may be one of several dates, ideally, when the patient last ingested medication if documented in a medical record. If the month or day is unknown, enter 99 as the default value (e.g., 01/99/2005).

Comment: Date Therapy Stopped

The interval between **Date Therapy Started** (item 36) and **Date Therapy Stopped** (item 43) is meant to encompass the entire period (including interruptions in therapy) that the patient was receiving medication to treat TB disease or suspected TB disease. **Patient self-report without medical documentation is not acceptable.** Although there may be interruptions in anti-TB drug therapy, enter the final documented date on which the patient last ingested medication for TB disease or suspected TB. For patients being treated for TB disease or suspected TB disease, enter **Date Therapy Stopped**, according to the following chart:

Hierarchy for Determining Date Therapy Stopped (for entire treatment period)

Preferred Date Therapy Stopped
If this date is not known, choose the next alternative date stopped

Date Patient Last Ingested Medication

↓

Next Alternative Date Therapy Stopped
If this date is not known, choose the last alternative date

Date Medication Dispensed to the Patient Would Have Run Out if the Patient had Taken All the Medication

↓

Last Alternative Date Therapy Stopped

Date Medication Prescribed to the Patient Would Have Run Out if the Patient Had Taken All the Medication from the Date of Prescription (from the final prescription for the last bottle)

Comment: Update the date that therapy was stopped
Update the date therapy was stopped only if a patient was lost to follow-up and then returns and completes therapy.

Comment: Reopened case
If a case is reopened (e.g., patient who has been lost to follow-up is found, restarts therapy, and then completes therapy), update this form (Case Completion Report [Follow Up – Report 2]) to reflect that the patient completed therapy.

Exercise
43. Date Therapy Stopped

Case Study – Hannibal

Hannibal, a convicted murderer, was diagnosed on October 31, 2009, with TB disease while incarcerated at Folsom Prison. He also had HIV and liver disease. He received DOT. On November 23, 2009, he complained of nausea, fever, and had yellowish skin. On November 24, Hannibal received DOT in the morning. He became very ill and died later that evening. The medical examiner determined that Hannibal's death was likely due to an adverse reaction to INH.

43.1 What is the Date for Therapy Stopped?
(circle the one best answer)

A.

Month		Day		Year			
1	1	2	3	2	0	0	9

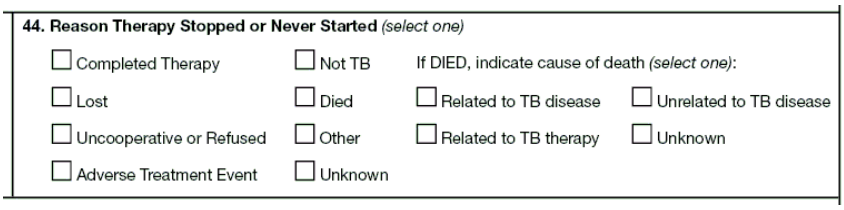
X B.

Month		Day		Year			
1	1	2	4	2	0	0	9

C.

Month		Day		Year			
1	1	9	9	2	0	0	9

44. Reason Therapy Stopped or Never Started



Primary Purpose: Programmatic function. Data are used to document treatment outcome.

Complete this item when the patient completes therapy or the case is closed. Select the primary reason that TB therapy was ended and not resumed, or was never started.

Option *(select one)*	Description
Completed therapy	Patient completed the prescribed course of therapy per the medical record as recorded by the clinician caring for the patient.
Lost	Patient could not be located before the start or the completion of treatment (e.g., the patient moved to an **unknown** location, or the forwarding address is known but the patient was not found at that address). Code patients who move outside the United States and cannot be followed up as **Other**.
Uncooperative or refused	Patient refused to complete therapy (e.g., stopped taking drugs).
Adverse treatment event	Therapy was **permanently** stopped because of an adverse event due to anti-TB medications. Select this option only if the patient lived. If the patient died because of an adverse TB treatment event, select • **Died** as the Reason Therapy Stopped **and then select** • **Related to TB Therapy for Cause of Death** even if the patient stopped TB therapy prior to the death due to an adverse treatment event. This is a determination that has to be made by the clinician.
Not TB	Completed diagnostic evaluation did not substantiate the diagnosis of TB (e.g., *M. avium* was isolated from a clinical specimen).
Died	Patient was alive at diagnosis but died before the start or completion of treatment. This also applies to a patient classified as alive for **Status at TB Diagnosis** (item 15) if the patient was taking at least 2 anti-TB drugs before the day of death, even though the TB case was not verified and counted until after death.

Other	Therapy was discontinued for a known reason **not** included in the above choices and is **not Unknown**, (e.g., patient moved outside the United States, or patient moved from state A to state B, and state A notified state B, but state B never followed up).
Unknown	Reason that therapy was stopped is **not** known.

Comment: Reopen a case
If a case is reopened (e.g., patient who has been lost to follow-up is found within 12 months of when the patient was lost, restarts therapy, and then completes therapy), update this form (Case Completion Report [Follow Up – Report 2]) to reflect that the patient completed therapy.

If you selected **Died**, indicate one **Cause of Death**.

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
Related to TB disease	TB was • The immediate cause **or** • An underlying cause **or** • Another significant condition contributing to death (even if TB was not the main cause of death)	Written documentation of the cause of death (e.g., death certificate, autopsy report, medical records) is recommended. However, oral information from a reliable source (e.g., a health care provider) will be accepted. A death certificate is **not** necessarily required to complete this field. In some cases deaths may be certified before receipt of results of • Positive *M. tuberculosis* culture **or** • Other findings consistent with TB Classify as related to TB disease if the patient died as a result of a surgical procedure for which • The primary indication was the diagnosis of TB **or** • TB complicated a surgical procedure **not** related to TB (e.g., heart surgery) Criteria for determining the cause of death related to TB disease should be specified by the clinician.
Related to TB therapy	TB therapy (e.g., adverse treatment event) was related to the cause of death.	Criteria for determining the cause of death related to TB therapy should be specified by the clinician.

Unrelated to TB disease	TB was **not** • The immediate cause **or** • An underlying cause **or** • Another significant condition contributing to death	
Unknown	Cause of death is **not** known.	Every effort should be made to determine if death was related to TB disease before classifying as unknown.

Note: Update this item if additional information is obtained.

Exercise
44. Reason Therapy Stopped or Never Started

Case Study – Hannibal (continued from Item 43)

44.1 What is the Reason that Therapy was Stopped for Hannibal?
(circle the one best answer.)

A. Completed Therapy

B. Adverse Treatment Event

X C. Died

Note to answer: This question is asking **what is the reason that therapy was stopped, not what is the cause of death**. The autopsy indicated that his death was likely due to an adverse treatment event to INH. However, the reason that therapy was stopped was that Hannibal died, and then it was determined the cause of death was related to TB therapy.

If his therapy had been stopped before he died, the answer would still be the same because he died. You would answer adverse treatment event for therapy stopped only for a patient who had not died and his/her treatment was permanently stopped.

45. Reason Therapy Extended >12 Months

Primary Purpose: Program function. Data are used to document reason for extended treatment and to calculate program indicators.

Use the information entered for **Date Therapy Started** (item 36) and **Date Therapy Stopped** (item 43) to calculate the length of anti-TB therapy. Sources for the reason(s) therapy was extended include patient medical records, patient interview, and health care provider interview.

Option *(select all that apply)*	Description	Comment
Rifampin resistance	Patient had drug-resistant TB that would require a treatment protocol lasting more than 12 months (e.g., resistance to at least rifampin) according to the ATS/CDC/IDSA Official Joint Statement on the Treatment of TB.	
Adverse drug reaction	Patient had a significant adverse drug reaction or experienced an adverse treatment event due to anti-TB medications that prolonged therapy.	
Non-adherence	There were barriers to the patient's adherence to anti-TB therapy (e.g., treatment interruption), or the patient's lack of adherence resulted in extension of therapy beyond 12 months.	
Failure	A sputum specimen tested positive 4 or more months after treatment began.	Criteria for determining failure should be specified by the clinician.
Clinically indicated—other reasons	Clinical indications **(other than adverse drug reactions)** include central nervous system TB (e.g., meningitis), severe liver disease, or other criteria as specified by the clinician.	
Other	Reason does **not** include any of the choices listed above.	Use additional space at the bottom of the page to write comments regarding **Other** reasons.

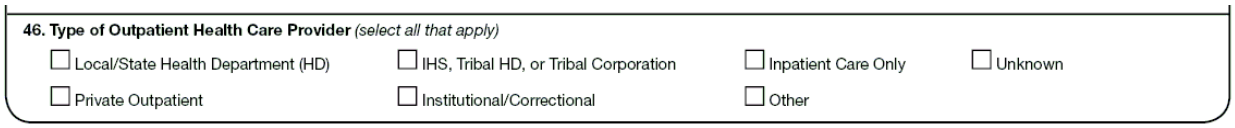
Exercise
45. Reason Therapy Extended >12 months

What is the Reason Therapy was Extended for > 12 Months for the following patients? (Choose the one best answer by matching the **Reason Therapy was Extended for > 12 Months** with the patient. Write the letter for the Reason Therapy was Extended next to the question number.)

		Patient
D___	**45.1**	Ralph, a homeless man, begins DOT and has a sputum culture conversion from positive to negative by 2 months. But at 4 months his sputum results are positive.
E___	**45.2**	Amy, a 3-year-old, has TB meningitis.
C___	**45.3**	Jose and his brother Raul go on an extended camping trip to Yosemite National Park. He loses his medicine and does not get more medicine until he returns to the clinic 2 months later.
A___	**45.4**	Bob's initial drug susceptibility results indicate that the isolate is resistant to isoniazid and rifampin.
B___	**45.5**	Nancy experiences severe breathing difficulties and hives a week into therapy. Her doctor changes her anti-TB medications.

Reason Therapy was Extended > 12 months
A. Rifampin resistance
B. Adverse drug reaction
C. Non-adherence
D. Failure
E. Clinical indications – other reasons

46. Type of Outpatient Health Care Provider



Primary Purpose: Programmatic function. Data are used to guide TB programs in allocating resources.

Definition for **Type of Outpatient Health Care Provider:** setting or affiliation of the provider who has primary responsibility for clinical outpatient decision making (excluding diagnostic workup, contact investigations, anti-TB medications, and directly observed therapy [DOT]).

Note:
- *Outpatient* refers to a setting that is not a hospital and that does not provide acute care, such as a clinic or a physician's office.
- *Inpatient* refers to a hospital or acute-care setting.

Here, these terms refer to the physician, not to the patient. These terms also denote the type of services that are provided. Some institutions, such as a hospital, correctional facility, or long-term care facility, may have both outpatient and inpatient settings.

Option *(select all that apply)*	Description
Local/state health department (HD)	Includes a TB program or a health clinic of a health department.
Private outpatient	Includes private physician or health care provider, health maintenance organization (HMO), and private managed health care provider.
IHS, tribal HD, or tribal corporation	Primary responsibility for clinical outpatient decision making rests with the Indian Health Service (IHS); a tribal health department, such as the American Indian or Alaska Native Tribal Health Department; or a tribal corporation, such as the Tribal Healthcare Corporation.
Institutional/ correctional	Includes nursing homes and assisted living facilities, and all types of correctional facilities.
Inpatient care only	Patient did **not** receive outpatient TB care. Care provided in a hospital.
Other	The provider is **not** included in the other categories and is **not Unknown** (e.g., state TB chest hospital providing outpatient care, city/county/state-owned hospitals that are not part of the health department providing outpatient care, private hospital providing outpatient care, Veterans Administration hospital, federal program, military facility, or community-based organization [CBO]).

Unknown	Type of health care provider is **not** known. If you select **Unknown,** do **not** select any other option for type of health care provider.

Comment: Private outpatient
This category includes the private provider who has the primary responsibility for clinical outpatient decision making for a TB patient, even though the TB control program or local/state health department may be periodically contacting the private provider for the purpose of completing the RVCT and ensuring proper TB case management.

Comment: Inpatient care only
Examples of inpatient care only include

- TB diagnosed at autopsy
- Patients who were in the hospital but died before receiving outpatient TB care
- Patients who received all of their TB care as an inpatient in a hospital

Comment: Multiple options
If a patient first received care from a private health care provider, but after a time (e.g., 3 months) lost his or her medical insurance and began receiving care from the local or state health department, select both **Private** and **Local/State Health Department.**

Exercise
46. Type of Outpatient Health Care Provider

What is the Type of Outpatient Health Care Provider for the following patients?
(Choose the one best answer by matching the **Type of outpatient health care provider** with the **Patient**. Write the letter for the type of provider next to the question number.)

	Patient	
D___	**46.1**	Clyde is arrested for armed robbery. He is diagnosed and treated for TB disease during the 6 months that he is in the Bonnie Springs Jail.
F___	**46.2**	Victor, a Vietnam War veteran, comes to a Virginia Veterans Administration Hospital to receive DOT.
E___	**46.3**	Howard, an HIV patient, is admitted to National Jewish Health hospital for treatment of XDR TB, where he receives all of his TB treatment.
C___	**46.4**	Nita is treated for TB disease at the Cherokee Indian Hospital.
A ___	**46.5**	Curtis is diagnosed with active TB at the Dallas County Health Department and starts DOT.
B___	**46.6**	Joel is diagnosed and treated for TB disease by his physician at the Kaiser Permanente Health Center.

Type of Outpatient Health Care Provider

A. Local/ State Health Department

B. Private Outpatient

C. IHS, Tribal HD, or Tribal Corporation

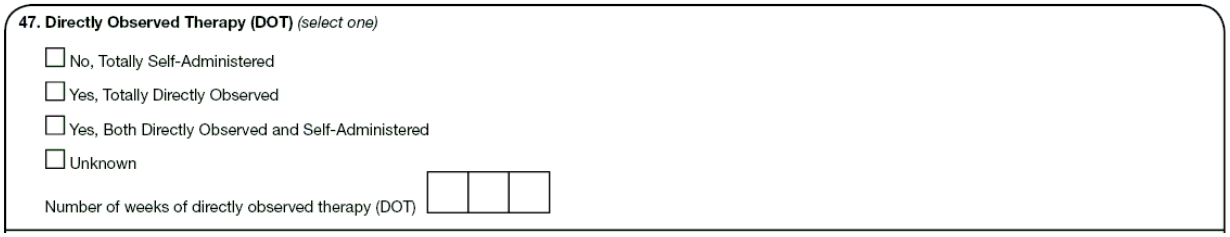
D. Institutional/ Correctional

E. Inpatient Care Only

F. Other

G. Unknown

47. Directly Observed Therapy (DOT)


47. Directly Observed Therapy (DOT) *(select one)*

☐ No, Totally Self-Administered

☐ Yes, Totally Directly Observed

☐ Yes, Both Directly Observed and Self-Administered

☐ Unknown

Number of weeks of directly observed therapy (DOT) ☐☐☐

Primary Purpose: Case management. Data are used to document administration of TB medications.

Directly observed therapy (DOT), or supervised therapy, involves the direct visual observation by a health care provider (e.g., public health nurse, outreach worker, nurse, nurse's aide) or other reliable trained person (e.g., worker in a homeless shelter) of a patient's ingestion of medication. Delivering medication to a patient without visual confirmation of ingestion does not constitute DOT. However, a live video camera confirmation of ingestion of medicine of **carefully selected patients** (e.g., stable and compliant) constitutes DOT.

Anti-TB medication may be

1) Self-administered (e.g., patient ingests medication dose[s] **without** direct visual observation by a health care provider or other reliable person)
   or
2) Given by using DOT
   or
3) A combination of self-administered and given by using DOT

Option *(select one)*	Description
No, totally self-administered	**No** doses of medication were given under direct supervision.
Yes, totally directly observed	Response applies if DOT was used for **all** doses for a patient who was taking medication 1–5 times a week. Response **also applies** if the patient was taking medication 7 times a week and DOT was used for at least 5 of those doses (i.e., patient self-administered the dose[s] during weekends and holidays).
Yes, both directly observed and self-administered	Response applies if the patient self-administered **any** dose while taking medication 1–5 times a week. Response does **not** apply if the patient was taking medication 7 times a week and DOT was used for at least 5 of those doses (i.e., patient self-administered the dose[s] during weekends and holidays). Response also applies if patient took several months of self-administered therapy and several months of DOT.
Unknown	It is **not** known whether any doses were given under direct supervision.

If you selected any **Yes** option, enter the **Number of weeks of directly observed therapy (DOT).**

Option *(select one)*	Description	Comment
Number of weeks of directly observed therapy (DOT)	Based on the total number of regimen-appropriate weeks and doses ingested under directly observed supervision (e.g., 026)	The total number of DOT weeks must be less than or equal to the time between **Date Therapy Started** (item 36) and **Date Therapy Stopped** (item 43).

To calculate **Number of weeks of directly observed therapy** (DOT weeks), use the following methods:

- **Review the patient's medication records to determine the number of doses given by DOT each week**
  Review the patient's medication records to determine the number of doses given by DOT each week, or 7-day period. The number of days in a week is 7, but the calculation of DOT (or medication) weeks should be independent of, or not restricted to, calendar weeks (i.e., Sunday through Saturday).

- **Example: Medication week**
  A medication week can be, for example, Monday through Sunday or Wednesday through Tuesday, as long as the week consists of 7 consecutive days.

- **Missed DOT dose**
  If a patient misses a DOT dose or there is a holiday during a medication week (i.e., DOT cannot be given that week), as long as DOT is used when the missed dose(s) is made up at the end of therapy, the dose(s) given at the end of therapy can be combined with the last "partial DOT week" and counted as a "full DOT week."

- **Count as a DOT week**
  Count as a DOT week any week during which DOT was used for every dose for a patient who was taking medication 1–5 times a week. If the patient was taking medication 7 times a week, DOT must have been used for at least 5 doses.

Often, the health department or the person completing the RVCT form does not have direct access to the entire patient medical record or medication log because the TB patient is or was cared for by a provider other than the health department (e.g., private health care provider). A private health care provider usually does not provide DOT; rather, a public health care provider (e.g., public health nurse) provides DOT and maintains the medication log and medication dosage calendar. The health department periodically follows up with the provider, and when therapy is completed or the case is closed, the health department usually completes a "close-out" form. In such instances, the health department should request a copy of the medication log or review the log with the person who provided DOT (e.g., public health nurse) to determine the amount of medication that was given by DOT.

Exercise
47. Directly Observed Therapy (DOT)

Case study – Maximo

Maximo is diagnosed with TB in June 2009 after being evaluated through a free clinic in Laredo, Texas. He is provided housing by the health department and starts on a 4-drug DOT regimen administered by the health department on June 9, 2009. On August 4 (after 8 weeks of daily 4-drug therapy), his DOT regimen changes to twice-weekly INH and RIF. He misses doses on August 25 and 27, October 8, and November 26 (Thanksgiving day). He successfully completes treatment and adheres to DOT up to December 17, 2009.

47.1 What would you select for Directly Observed Therapy?
(circle the one best answer)

A. No, totally self-administered

X B. Yes, totally directly observed

C. Yes, both directly observed and self-administered

D. Unknown

Use this calendar to determine weeks of DOT.

May						
					1	2
3	4	5	6	7	8	9
10	11	12	13	14	15	16
17	18	19	20	21	22	23
24	25	26	27	28	29	30
31						

June						
	1	2	3	4	5	6
7	8	9	10	11	12	13
14	15	16	17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24	25	26	27
28	29	30				

July						
			1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9	10	11
12	13	14	15	16	17	18
19	20	21	22	23	24	25
26	27	28	29	30	31	

August						
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

September						
		1	2	3	4	5
6	7	8	9	10	11	12
13	14	15	16	17	18	19
20	21	22	23	24	25	26
27	28	29	30			

October						
				1	2	3
4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17
18	19	20	21	22	23	24
25	26	27	28	29	30	31

November						
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21
22	23	24	25	26	27	28
29	30					

December						
		1	2	3	4	5
6	7	8	9	10	11	12
13	14	15	16	17	18	19
20	21	22	23	24	25	26
27	28	29	30	31		

47.2 What would you enter for the number of weeks of DOT?
(circle the one best answer)

A.

0	2	0

X B.

0	2	6

C.

0	3	2

Note for answer: There always need to be 3 numbers entered into the boxes provided. In this case there needs to be a leading 0 in the first box as opposed to entering "2" in the left-most box. If the number of weeks of DOT is a single digit such as 8 weeks, this would be entered as 008. If the patient has 2 full years of DOT, this would be entered as 104 weeks.

Count the following weeks of DOT for Maximo:

- 8 weeks of daily 4-drug regimen
- 18 weeks of 2-drug regimen

This equals a total of 26 weeks of DOT.

Do not count the following doses of DOT for Maximo:

- The missed doses on August 25 and 27 when no drugs were given. (The missed doses in August were "made up" on December 8 and 10 by adding an extra week of therapy.)
- The week when only 1 dose of a twice-weekly regimen was given on October 6 and missed on October 8. (The missed dose on October 8 was "made up" on December 15. October 6 and December 15 contribute 0.5 of a twice-weekly regimen each, adding up to 1 week.)
- The week when only 1 dose of a twice-weekly regimen was given on November 24 and missed on November 26. (The missed dose on November 26 was "made up" on December 17. November 24 and December 17 contribute 0.5 of a twice-weekly regimen each, adding up to 1 week.)

Case study for Items 43–47 – Maximo (continued)

Now imagine that Maximo self-administers doses on August 25, August 27, and September 1 because he was out of town visiting his sister that week. He still missed the October 8 dose and the November 26 dose.

How would you complete items 43–47 on the RVCT?

47.3 Item 43: Date Therapy Stopped
(circle the one best answer)

A. December 12, 2009

X B. December 17, 2009

47.4 Item 44: Reason Therapy Stopped or Never Started
(circle the one best answer)

X A. Completed Therapy

B. Unknown

47.5 Item 45: Reason Therapy Extended > 12 Months
(circle the one best answer)

A. Nonadherence

X B. Not applicable, leave blank

47.6 Item 46: Type of Outpatient Health Care Provider
(circle the one best answer)

X **A.** Local/State Health Department

B. Private

47.7 Item 47: Directly Observed Therapy (DOT)
(circle the one best answer)

X **A.** Yes, both directly observed and self-administered

B. Unknown

47.8 Item 47: Directly Observed Therapy (DOT). How many weeks of DOT were provided?
(circle the one best answer)

A. 020

X **B.** 025

Note for answers:

47.3 Item 43: Date Therapy Stopped is December 17, 2009 (12/17/2009).

47.4 Item 44: Reason Therapy Stopped or Never Started is completed therapy.

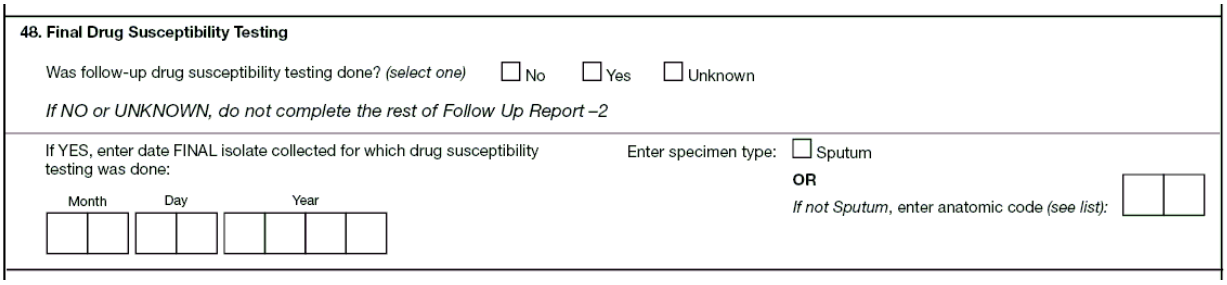
47.5 Item 45: Reason Therapy Extended > 12 Months is not applicable, leave blank.

47.6 Item 46: Type of Outpatient Health Care Provider is Local/state health department.

47.7 Item 47: Directly Observed Therapy (DOT) is Yes, both directly observed and self-administered.

47.8 Item 47: Directly Observed Therapy (DOT) Use the above calendar to count the number of weeks of DOT. The total number of DOT weeks from initiation of therapy to completion is entered as 025. There were 8 weeks of 4-drug regimen and 17 weeks of 2-drug regimen. Do not count the last week of August, when no DOT doses were given. Then begin counting 7-day periods on September 7. The dose on October 10 (whether missed or self-administered) is skipped, and October 5 and 12 administration forms a DOT week (2 doses appropriately given). Begin counting whole weeks again the week of October 16. The December 12 dose counts as 0.5 dose, but there is no dose to match it with, so it does not form a DOT week.

48. Final Drug Susceptibility Testing


48. Final Drug Susceptibility Testing

Was follow-up drug susceptibility testing done? *(select one)* ☐ No ☐ Yes ☐ Unknown

If NO or UNKNOWN, do not complete the rest of Follow Up Report –2

If YES, enter date FINAL isolate collected for which drug susceptibility testing was done:

Month Day Year

Enter specimen type: ☐ Sputum

OR

If not Sputum, enter anatomic code *(see list)*:

Primary Purpose: Surveillance. Data are used to observe trends in drug-resistant TB and to learn about its epidemiology.

Option *(select one)*	Description
No	Follow-up drug susceptibility testing was **not** performed.
Yes	Drug susceptibility testing was performed on a specimen that was collected 30 or more days after the specimen on which initial drug susceptibility testing was performed.
Unknown	It is **not** known whether follow-up drug susceptibility testing was performed.

Comment:
This variable will help assess the frequency of acquired drug resistance.

If you selected **Yes**, enter the following information.

	Description	Comment
Date FINAL specimen collected on which drug susceptibility testing was done	Month, day, and year (e.g., 01/17/2009)	This date should be 30 or more days after the collection date of the initial specimen on which drug susceptibility testing was done (item 39). This information is usually available from medical records or laboratory reports. If the month or day is unknown, enter 99 as the default value (e.g., 01/99/2009).

Select the **Specimen Type** on which the final drug susceptibility testing was done.

Option *(select one)*	**Description**
Sputum	
Not sputum	Enter appropriate anatomic code (e.g., 30 for pericarditis) from Appendix C – Anatomic Codes

Exercise
48. Final Drug Susceptibility Testing

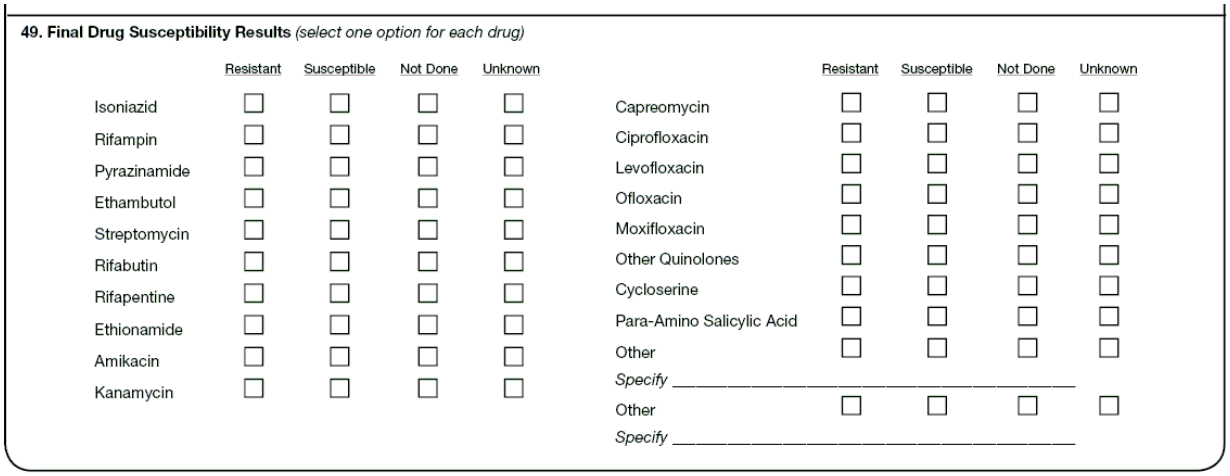
48.1 When must the final specimen be collected on which Final Drug Susceptibility Testing is done?
(circle the one best answer)

A. The date can be any time after the collection date for the initial specimen on which drug susceptibility was done.

B. The date should be less than 30 days after the collection date for the initial specimen on which drug susceptibility testing was done.

X C. The date should be 30 or more days after the collection date for the initial specimen on which drug susceptibility testing was done.

49. Final Drug Susceptibility Results



49. Final Drug Susceptibility Results *(select one option for each drug)*

	Resistant	Susceptible	Not Done	Unknown
Isoniazid	☐	☐	☐	☐
Rifampin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Pyrazinamide	☐	☐	☐	☐
Ethambutol	☐	☐	☐	☐
Streptomycin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Rifabutin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Rifapentine	☐	☐	☐	☐
Ethionamide	☐	☐	☐	☐
Amikacin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Kanamycin	☐	☐	☐	☐

	Resistant	Susceptible	Not Done	Unknown
Capreomycin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Ciprofloxacin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Levofloxacin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Ofloxacin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Moxifloxacin	☐	☐	☐	☐
Other Quinolones	☐	☐	☐	☐
Cycloserine	☐	☐	☐	☐
Para-Amino Salicylic Acid	☐	☐	☐	☐
Other	☐	☐	☐	☐
Specify _____				
Other	☐	☐	☐	☐
Specify _____				

Primary Purpose: Programmatic function. Data are used to monitor trends in drug resistance.

Record results for the **final** specimen on which drug susceptibility testing was performed. Drug susceptibility testing procedures should comply with approved and accepted guidelines. If drug susceptibility testing was performed on multiple specimens, select the most appropriate specimen: the one associated with the primary, or major, site of disease; the final specimen from the major site of disease that yields the best or most information concerning drug susceptibility results; or the final specimen that tested positive.

For **each** drug listed, select one option from the following.

Option *(select one)*	Description
Resistant	Drug has **any** degree of resistance (even partial resistance or resistance at a low concentration of the drug, or other than completely susceptible result).
Susceptible	Select only if completely susceptible.
Not done	Susceptibility testing was **not** done for this drug.
Unknown	It is **not** known whether the test was performed. **or** Results were **not** available or result is not known for a reason other than pending results.

Note: Other Quinolones excludes ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, and ofloxacin because they are listed on the form.

Use the space at the bottom of the form to write comments (e.g., name of the laboratory that performed drug susceptibility testing) regarding the case of TB reported on this form (Case Completion Report).

If radiometric and conventional results on the same specimen differ (e.g., one is resistant, the other is susceptible), discuss the results with your state TB laboratory director and complete the item accordingly.

Exercise
49. Final Drug Susceptibility Results

Case study for Items 48 and 49 – Lana

Lana is diagnosed with sputum culture-positive TB in October 2009. Initial drug susceptibility tests showed her TB is sensitive to all of the first-line drugs that are prescribed. She has a number of treatment interruptions and develops rifampin resistance, which is discovered upon repeat drug susceptibility testing of sputum collected on December 13, 2009. The isolate remains susceptible to isoniazid, pyrazinamide, and ethambutol. The isolate is also found to be susceptible to rifabutin, ciprofloxacin, moxifloxacin, streptomycin, amikacin, and kanamycin. No other drugs are tested.

What are the Final Drug Susceptibility Results for Lana?
(Choose the one best answer by checking the box indicating **Final Drug Susceptibility Results** from the laboratory for each drug.)

		A. Resistant	B. Susceptible	C. Not Done	D. Unknown
49.1	Isoniazid	☐	X☐	☐	☐
49.2	Rifampin	X☐	☐	☐	☐
49.3	Pyrazinamide	☐	X☐	☐	☐
49.4	Ethambutol	☐	X☐	☐	☐
49.5	Streptomycin	☐	X☐	☐	☐
49.6	Rifabutin	☐	X☐	☐	☐
49.7	Rifapentine	☐	☐	X☐	☐
49.8	Ethionamide	☐	☐	X☐	☐
49.9	Amikacin	☐	X☐	☐	☐
49.10	Kanamycin	☐	X☐	☐	☐

		A. Resistant	B. Susceptible	C. Not Done	D. Unknown
49.11	Capreomycin	☐	☐	X☐	☐
49.12	Ciprofloxacin	☐	X☐	☐	☐
49.13	Levofloxacin	☐	☐	X☐	☐
49.14	Ofloxacin	☐	☐	X☐	☐
49.15	Moxifloxacin	☐	X☐	☐	☐
49.16	Other Quinolones	☐	☐	X☐	☐
49.17	Cycloserine	☐	☐	X☐	☐
49.18	Para-Amino Salicylic Acid	☐	☐	X☐	☐
49.19	Other Specify _____	☐	☐	X☐	☐
49.20	Other Specify _____	☐	☐	X☐	☐

Note for answers: All items have to be checked as either resistant, susceptible, not done, or unknown. You can't leave any of them blank unless the item is pending.

Appendix A
Tuberculosis Case Definition for Public Health Surveillance

(Revised May 13, 2009)

Clinical description

A chronic bacterial infection caused by *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, usually characterized pathologically by the formation of granulomas. The most common site of infection is the lung, but other organs may be involved.

Clinical case definition

A case that meets **all** of the following criteria:

- A positive tuberculin skin test result or positive interferon gamma release assay for *M. tuberculosis*
- Other signs and symptoms compatible with tuberculosis (TB) (e.g., abnormal chest radiograph, abnormal chest computerized tomography scan or other chest imaging study, or clinical evidence of current disease)
- Treatment with two or more anti-TB medications
- A completed diagnostic evaluation

Laboratory criteria for diagnosis

- Isolation of *M. tuberculosis* complex from a clinical specimen,[*]
  or
- Demonstration of *M. tuberculosis* complex from a clinical specimen by nucleic acid amplification test,[†]
  or
- Demonstration of acid-fast bacilli in a clinical specimen when a culture has not been or cannot be obtained or is falsely negative or contaminated.

Case classification

Confirmed: a case that meets the clinical case definition or is laboratory confirmed

Comment

A case should not be counted twice within any consecutive 12-month period. However, a case occurring in a patient who had previously had verified TB disease should be reported and counted again if more than 12 months have elapsed since the patient completed therapy. A case should also be reported and counted again if the patient was lost to supervision for greater than 12 months and TB disease can be verified again. Mycobacterial diseases other than those caused by *M. tuberculosis* complex should not be counted in tuberculosis morbidity statistics unless there is concurrent tuberculosis.

---

[*]Use of rapid identification techniques for *M. tuberculosis* (e.g., DNA probes and mycolic acid high-pressure liquid chromatography performed on a culture from a clinical specimen) are acceptable under this criterion.

[†]Nucleic acid amplification (NAA) tests must be accompanied by culture for mycobacteria species for clinical purposes. A culture isolate of *M. tuberculosis* complex is required for complete drug susceptibility testing and also genotyping. However, for surveillance purposes, CDC will accept results obtained from NAA tests approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and used according to the approved product labeling on the package insert, or a test produced and validated in accordance with applicable FDA and Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments (CLIA) regulations.

Appendix B
Recommendations for Reporting and Counting Tuberculosis Cases

(Revised May 13, 2009)

Since publication of the "Recommendations for Counting Reported Tuberculosis Cases"[1] in July 1997, numerous changes have occurred, and many issues have been raised within the field of tuberculosis (TB) surveillance. This current version updates and supersedes the previous version.

A distinction should be made between ***reporting*** TB cases to a health department and ***counting*** TB cases for determining incidence of disease. Throughout each year, TB cases and suspected cases are reported to public health authorities by sources such as clinics, hospitals, laboratories, and health care providers. From these reports, the state or local TB control officer must determine which cases meet the current surveillance definition for TB disease and whether the case is countable. These countable TB cases are then reported to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC).

Beginning in 2009, state and local TB control officers may also report to CDC those TB cases that are verified but not countable for morbidity statistics, as a measure of programmatic and case management burden. The noncountable report can include persons with TB disease recurring within a consecutive 12-month period after the patient completed TB therapy.

I. **Reporting TB Cases.** CDC recommends that health care providers and laboratories be required to report all TB cases or suspected cases to state and local health departments based on the current "Tuberculosis Case Definition for Public Health Surveillance" (Appendix A). This notification is essential in order for TB programs to

- Ensure case supervision
- Ensure completion of appropriate therapy
- Ensure completion of contact investigations
- Evaluate program effectiveness
- Assess trends and characteristics of TB morbidity

II. **TB Surveillance.** For purposes of surveillance, a case of TB is defined on the basis of laboratory or clinical evidence of active disease due to *M. tuberculosis* complex.*

* Because most laboratories use tests that do not routinely distinguish *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* from very closely related species, these laboratories report culture results as being positive or negative for "*Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex." Although in almost all cases of human disease, isolates in the *M. tuberculosis* complex are, in fact, *M. tuberculosis*, other species are possible. For example, one study in San Diego found that 6% of human tuberculosis was caused by *Mycobacterium bovis*; cultures from these cases would be reported by most laboratories as being positive for *M. tuberculosis* complex. Other species in the *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex include *M. africanum, M. microti, M. canetii, M. caprae, and M. pinnipedii*. Although *M. microti, M. canetii, M. caprae, and M. pinnipedii* are newly described species, their inclusion in *M. tuberculosis* complex should not impact public health laboratories or programs, because only a few laboratories identify to the species level. These seven species are almost identical in DNA homology studies. In terms of their ability to cause clinical disease or be transmissible from person to person, *M. bovis*, *M. africanum, M. microti, M. canetii, M. caprae, and M. pinnipedii* behave like *M. tuberculosis*; therefore, disease caused by any of the organisms should be reported as TB, using the Report of

Verified Case of Tuberculosis (RVCT). The only exception is the BCG strain of *M. bovis*, which may be isolated from persons who have received the vaccine for protection against TB or as cancer immunotherapy; disease caused by the BCG strain of *M. bovis* should not be reported as TB.

a. Laboratory Case Definition

- Isolation of *M. tuberculosis* complex from a clinical specimen. The use of rapid identification techniques for *M. tuberculosis* performed on a culture from a clinical specimen, such as DNA probes and high-pressure liquid chromatography (HPLC), is acceptable under this criterion.

OR

- Demonstration of *M. tuberculosis* from a clinical specimen by nucleic acid amplification (NAA) test. NAA tests must be accompanied by cultures of mycobacterial species. However, for surveillance purposes, CDC will accept results obtained from NAA tests approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and used according to the approved product labeling on the package insert, or a test produced and validated in accordance with applicable FDA and Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments (CLIA) regulations.

OR

- Demonstration of acid-fast bacilli (AFB) in a clinical specimen when a culture has not been or cannot be obtained or is falsely negative or contaminated; historically this criterion has been most commonly used to diagnose TB in the postmortem setting.

b. Clinical Case Definition. In the absence of laboratory confirmation of *M. tuberculosis* complex after a diagnostic process has been completed, persons must have **all** of the following criteria for clinical TB:

- Evidence of TB infection based on a positive tuberculin skin test result or positive interferon gamma release assay for *M. tuberculosis*

AND

- One of the following:
  (1) Signs and symptoms compatible with current TB disease, such as an abnormal chest radiograph or abnormal chest computerized tomography scan or other chest imaging study,

  OR

  (2) Clinical evidence of current disease (e.g., fever, night sweats, cough, weight loss, hemoptysis)

AND

- Current treatment with two or more anti-TB medications

NOTE: *The software for TB surveillance developed by CDC includes a calculated variable called "Vercrit," for which one of the values is "Provider Diagnosis." "Provider Diagnosis" is selected when the user chooses to override a "Suspect" default value in the case verification screen as "Verified by Provider Diagnosis." Thus, "Provider Diagnosis" is not a component of the case definition for TB in the current "Tuberculosis Case Definition for Public Health Surveillance" (Appendix A). CDC's national morbidity reports have traditionally included all TB cases that are considered verified by the reporting areas, without a requirement that cases meet the published case definition.*

III. Counting TB Cases. Cases that meet the current CDC surveillance case definition for verified TB are counted by 52 reporting areas with count authority (50 states, District of Columbia, and New York City) to determine annual incidence for the United States. The remaining 8 reporting areas (American Samoa, Federated States of Micronesia, Guam, Marshall Islands, Northern Mariana Islands, Puerto Rico, Republic of Palau, and U.S. Virgin Islands) report cases to CDC but are not included in the annual incidence for the United States. The laboratory and clinical case definitions are the two diagnostic categories used in the CDC "Tuberculosis Case Definition for Public Health Surveillance."

Most verified TB cases are accepted for counting based on laboratory confirmation of *M. tuberculosis* complex from a clinical specimen.

A person may have more than one discrete (separate and distinct) episode of TB. If disease recurs in a person **within** any 12-consecutive-month period after the patient completed therapy, count only one episode as a case. However, if TB disease recurs in a person, **and** if more than 12 months have elapsed since the person completed TB therapy or was lost to supervision, the TB case is considered a separate episode and should be counted as a new case.

Mycobacterial diseases other than those caused by *M. tuberculosis* complex should not be counted in TB morbidity statistics unless there is concurrent TB.

a. Verified TB Cases

COUNT

Count only verified TB cases that meet the laboratory or clinical case definitions (see Section II). The diagnosis of TB must be verified by the TB control officer or designee. The current CDC surveillance case definition for TB describes and defines the criteria to be used in the case definition for TB disease.

DO NOT COUNT

If diagnostic procedures have not been completed, do not count; wait for confirmation of disease. Do not count as a case the patient for which two or more anti-TB medications have been prescribed for preventive therapy for exposure to multidrug- resistant (MDR) TB, or while the diagnosis is still pending.

b. Nontuberculous Mycobacterial Diseases (NTM)

COUNT
An episode of TB disease diagnosed concurrently with another nontuberculous mycobacterial disease should be counted as a TB case.

DO NOT COUNT
Disease attributed to or caused by nontuberculous mycobacteria alone should not be counted as a TB case.

c. TB Cases Reported at Death

COUNT
TB cases first reported to the health department at the time of a person's death are counted as incident cases, provided the person had current disease at the time of death. The TB control officer should verify the diagnosis of TB.

DO NOT COUNT
Do not count as a case of TB if there is no evidence of current disease at the time of death or at autopsy.

d. Immigrants, Refugees, Permanent Resident Aliens, Border Crossers,* and Foreign Visitors[2]

COUNT

Immigrants and refugees who are examined after arriving in the United States and diagnosed with clinically active TB requiring anti-TB medications should be reported and counted by the locality of their current residence at the time of diagnosis regardless of citizenship status.

Border crossers* who are diagnosed with TB and plan to receive anti-TB therapy from a locality in the United States for 90 days or more should be reported and counted by the locality where they receive anti-TB therapy.

Foreign visitors (e.g., students, commercial representatives, and diplomatic personnel) who are diagnosed with TB, are receiving anti-TB therapy, **and** have been, or plan to remain in, the United States for 90 days or more should be reported and counted by the locality of current residence.

**Border crosser — defined, by the U.S. Citizenship and Immigration Services (USCIS)[2] as "an alien resident of the United States reentering the country after an absence of less than six months in Canada or Mexico, or a nonresident alien entering the United States across the Canadian border for stays of no more than six months, or across the Mexican border for stays of no more than 72 hours." Border crossers may go back and forth across the border many times in a short period.*

DO NOT COUNT

Any person who was diagnosed and started on anti-TB drugs in another country should not be counted as a new case but should be reported as a verified noncountable TB case.

Border crossers* and foreign visitors who are diagnosed with TB and receive anti-TB therapy from a locality in the United States for less than 90 days but plan to return to their native country to continue therapy should not be reported or counted by the locality where they receive anti-TB therapy.

e. Out-of-State or Out-of-Area Residents

COUNT

A person's TB case should be counted by the locality in which he or she resides at the time of diagnosis. TB in a person who has no address should be counted by the locality that diagnosed and is treating the TB. The TB control officer should notify the appropriate out-of-state or out-of-area TB control officer of the person's home locality to (1) determine whether the case has already been counted to avoid "double counting," and (2) agree on which TB control office should count the case if it has not yet been counted.

DO NOT COUNT

Do not count a case in a newly diagnosed TB patient who is an out-of-area resident and whose TB has already been counted by the out-of-area TB control office.

f. Migrants and Other Transients

COUNT

Persons without any fixed U.S. residence are considered to be the public health responsibility of their present locality and their TB case should be reported and counted where diagnosed.

DO NOT COUNT

Cases in transient TB patients should not be counted when there is evidence that they have already been counted by another locality.

g. Federal Facilities (e.g., Military and Veterans Administration Facilities)

COUNT

Cases in military personnel, dependents, or veterans should be reported and counted by the locality where the persons are residing in the United States at the time of diagnosis and initiation of treatment.

However, if military personnel or dependents are discovered to have TB at a military base outside the United States but are referred elsewhere for treatment (e.g., a military base located within the United States), the TB case should be reported and counted where treated and not where the diagnosis was made.

DO NOT COUNT
Do not count if the case was already counted by another locality in the United States.

h. Indian Health Service

COUNT
TB should be reported to the local health authority (e.g., state or county) and counted where diagnosed and treatment initiated. However, for a specific group such as the Navajo Nation, which is geographically located in multiple states, health departments should discuss each case and determine which locality should count the case.

DO NOT COUNT
Do not count if the case was already counted by another locality.

i. Correctional Facilities (e.g., Local, State, Federal, and Military)

COUNT
Persons who reside in local, state, federal, or military correctional facilities may frequently be transferred or relocated within and/or between various correctional facilities. TB in these persons should be reported to the local health authority and counted by the locality where the diagnosis was made and treatment plans were initiated.

DO NOT COUNT
Do not count correctional facility residents' TB cases that were counted elsewhere by another locality or correctional facility, even if treatment continues at another locale or correctional facility.

j. Peace Corps, Missionaries, and Other Citizens Residing Outside the United States

DO NOT COUNT
TB in persons diagnosed outside the United States should not be counted. TB in these persons should be counted by the country in which they are residing, regardless of their plans to return to the United States for further work-up or treatment.

IV. Suggested Administrative Practices

To promote uniformity in TB case counting, the following administrative procedures are recommended:

(a) All TB cases verified by the 52 reporting areas with count authority (50 states, District of Columbia, and New York City) during the calendar year (by December 31) will be included in the annual U.S. incidence count for that year. All tuberculosis cases verified during the calendar year by a reporting area with count authority from one of the remaining 8 reporting areas (American Samoa, Federated States of Micronesia, Guam, Marshall Islands,

Northern Mariana Islands, Puerto Rico, Republic of Palau, and U.S. Virgin Islands) are also counted but are not included in the annual incidence for the United States. Cases for which bacteriologic results are pending or for which confirmation of disease is questionable for any other reason should not be counted until their status is clearly determined; they should be counted at the time they meet the criteria for counting. This means that a case reported in one calendar year could be included in the morbidity count for the following year. The reporting area with count authority should ensure that there is agreement between final local and state TB figures reported to CDC. Currently, some reporting areas may not use this suggested protocol. Some of these areas may wait until the beginning of the following year when they have received and processed all of the TB cases for inclusion in the annual case count for the previous year. If reporting areas decide to revise their protocols, they should be aware that their TB trends may change.

(b) TB is occasionally reported to health departments over the telephone, by letter or fax, or on forms other than the Report of Verified Case of Tuberculosis (RVCT). Such information should be accepted as an official morbidity report if sufficient details are provided; otherwise, the notification should be used as an indicator of a possible TB case (suspect) which should be investigated promptly for confirmation.

V. TB Surveillance Definitions

Case - an episode of TB disease in a person meeting the laboratory or clinical criteria for TB as defined in the document "Tuberculosis Case Definition for Public Health Surveillance" (see Section II for criteria).

Suspect - a person for whom there is a high index of suspicion for active TB (e.g., a known contact to an active TB case or a person with signs or symptoms consistent with TB) who is currently under evaluation for TB disease.

Verification of a TB case - the process whereby a TB case, after the diagnostic evaluation is complete, is reviewed at the local level (e.g., state or county) by a TB control official who is familiar with TB surveillance definitions; if all the criteria for a TB case are met, the TB case is then verified and eligible for counting.

Counting of a TB case - the process whereby a reporting area with count authority evaluates verified TB cases against count criteria (e.g., assesses for case duplication). These cases are then counted for morbidity in that locality (e.g., state or county) and reported to CDC for national morbidity counting. Noncountable, verified cases may also be sent to CDC.

***Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex** (*M. tuberculosis* complex) - Because most laboratories use tests that do not routinely distinguish *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* from very closely related species, these laboratories report culture results as being positive or negative for "*Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex." Although in almost all cases of human disease, isolates in the *M. tuberculosis* complex are, in fact, *M. tuberculosis*, other species are possible. For example,

one study in San Diego found that 6% of human tuberculosis was caused by *Mycobacterium bovis*; cultures from these cases would be reported by most laboratories as being positive for *M. tuberculosis* complex. Other species in the *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex include *M. africanum, M. microti, M. canetii, M. caprae, and M. pinnipedii*. Although *M. microti, M. canetii, M. caprae, and M. pinnipedii* are newly described species, their inclusion in *M. tuberculosis* complex should not impact public health laboratories or programs because only a few laboratories identify to the species level. These seven species are almost identical in DNA homology studies. In terms of their ability to cause clinical disease or be transmissible from person to person, *M. bovis*, *M. africanum, M. microti, M. canetti, M. caprae, and M. pinnipedii* behave like *M. tuberculosis*; therefore, disease caused by any of the organisms should be reported as TB, using the Report of Verified Case of Tuberculosis (RVCT). The only exception is the BCG strain of *M. bovis*, which may be isolated from persons who have received the vaccine for protection against TB or as cancer immunotherapy; disease caused by the BCG strain of *M. bovis* should not be reported as TB.

Nontuberculous mycobacteria (NTM) - mycobacteria other than *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex that can cause human infection or disease. Common nontuberculous mycobacteria include *M. avium* complex or MAC (*M. avium, M. intracellulare*), *M. kansasii*, *M. marinum, M. scrofulaceum, M. chelonae, M. fortuitum*, and *M. simiae*. Other terms have been used to represent NTM, including MOTT (mycobacteria other than TB) and "atypical" mycobacteria.

Reporting area - areas responsible for counting and reporting verified TB cases to CDC. Currently there are 60 reporting areas: the 50 states, District of Columbia, New York City, American Samoa, Federated States of Micronesia, Guam, Marshall Islands, Northern Mariana Islands, Puerto Rico, Republic of Palau, and U.S. Virgin Islands. The annual incidence of tuberculosis for the United States is based on 52 reporting areas (the 50 states, District of Columbia, and New York City).

Alien - defined by the U.S. Citizenship and Immigration Services (USCIS)[2] as "any person not a citizen or national of the United States."

Border crosser - defined, by the U.S. Citizenship and Immigration Services (USCIS)[2] as "an alien resident of the United States reentering the country after an absence of less than six months in Canada or Mexico, or a nonresident alien entering the United States across the Canadian border for stays of no more than six months, or across the Mexican border for stays of no more than 72 hours." Border crossers may go back and forth across the border many times in a short period.

Class A TB with waiver[3]

All applicants who have tuberculosis disease and have been granted a waiver.

Class B1 TB, Pulmonary[3]

No treatment

- Applicants who have medical history, physical exam, HIV, or CXR findings suggestive of pulmonary TB but have negative AFB sputum smears and cultures and are not diagnosed with TB or can wait to have TB treatment started after immigration.

Completed treatment

- Applicants who were diagnosed with pulmonary TB and successfully completed directly observed therapy prior to immigration. The cover sheet should indicate if the initial sputum smears and cultures were positive and if drug susceptibility testing results are available.

Class B1 TB, Extrapulmonary[3]

Applicants with evidence of extrapulmonary TB. Document the anatomic site of infection.

Class B2 TB, Latent TB Infection (LTBI) Evaluation[3]

Applicants who have a tuberculin skin test ≥10 mm but otherwise have a negative evaluation for TB. The size of the TST reaction, the applicant's status with respect to LTBI treatment, and the medication(s) used should be documented. For applicants who had more than one TST, whether the applicant converted the TST should be documented (i.e., initial TST <10 mm but subsequent TST ≥10 mm).

Class B3 TB, Contact Evaluation[3]

Applicants who are a recent contact of a known tuberculosis case. The size of the applicant's TST reaction should be documented. Information about the source case, name, alien number, relationship to contact, and type of tuberculosis should also be documented.

Immigrant - defined by the USCIS[2] as "an alien admitted to the United States as a lawful permanent resident. Immigrants are those persons lawfully accorded the privilege of residing permanently in the United States. They may be issued immigrant visas by the Department of State overseas or adjusted to permanent resident status by the USCIS of the United States."

Permanent Resident Alien - see Immigrant.

Waivers[3] **-** A provision allows applicants undergoing pulmonary or laryngeal tuberculosis treatment to petition for a Class A TB with waiver. Waivers should be pursued for any immigrant or refugee who has a complicated clinical course and would benefit from receiving treatment of their tuberculosis in the United States. Applicants diagnosed with tuberculosis disease who are both smear- and culture-negative and will be traveling to the United States prior to start of treatment do not need to complete the waiver process.

References

1. *Recommendations for Counting Reported TB Cases.* Atlanta: CDC, July 1997.
2. U.S. Department of Homeland Security, U.S. Citizenship and Immigration Services; http://uscis.gov. Accessed March 2009.
3. *2007 Technical Instructions for Tuberculosis Screening and Treatment for Panel Physicians.* Atlanta: CDC, Division of Global Migration and Quarantine. http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dq/panel_2007.htm. Accessed March 2009.

Appendix C
Anatomic Codes

Anatomic Code	Anatomic Code
Dermal System **00** * Skin and skin appendages **01** * Subcutaneous Tissue **02** * Breast **03** Milk	**Cardiovascular System** **30** * Pericardium **31** * Heart **32** * Cardiac valve **33** Pericardial fluid **34** * Blood vessel
Hematopoietic System **04** * Bone marrow **05** * Spleen **06** * Blood	**Gastrointestinal System** **35** * Mouth **36** * Lip **37** * Tongue **38** * Tooth, gum, and supporting structures of the tooth **39** * Salivary gland **40** * Liver **41** * Gallbladder **42** * Extrahepatic bile duct **43** * Pancreas **44** Saliva **45** Bile and pancreatic fluid **46** * Pharynx, oropharynx, and hypopharynx **47** * Tonsils and adenoids **48** * Esophagus **49** * Stomach **50** * Small intestine - duodenum **51** * Small intestine - jejunum & ileum **52** * Appendix **53** * Colon **54** * Rectum **55** * Anus **56** Gastric aspirate **57** Gastrointestinal contents (feces) **58** Omentum and peritoneum **59** Peritoneal fluid
Lymphatic System **07** Lymph node	
Musculoskeletal System **08** Bone, NOS (Not Otherwise Specified) **09** Skeletal system (Bones of head, ribcage, and vertebral column) **10** Skeletal system (Bones of shoulder, girdle, pelvis, and extremities) **11** Soft tissue, NOS (Not Otherwise Specified) **12** Soft tissue (Muscles of head, neck, mouth, and upper extremity) **13** Soft tissue (Muscles of trunk, perineum, and lower extremity) **14** Tendon and tendon sheath **15** Ligament and fascia **16** Joints (Synovial tissue) **17** Synovial fluid	
Respiratory System **18** * Nose **19** * Accessory Sinus **20** * Nasopharynx **21** * Epiglottis **22** * Trachea **23** Bronchus **24** Bronchiole **25** Lung **26** Pleura **27** Upper respiratory fluids or tracheal fluids **28** Bronchial fluid **29** Pleural fluid	

* Only codes marked with an asterisk (*) should be used when a **Site of Disease** (item 16) is **Other**.

Urogenital System

- **60** Kidney
- **61** Renal pelvis
- **62** Ureter
- **63** Urinary bladder
- **64** Urethra
- **65** Penis
- **66** Prostate and seminal vesicle
- **67** Testis
- **68** Epididymis, vas deferens, spermatic cord, and scrotum
- **69** Urine
- **70** Male genital fluids
- **71** Vulva, labia, clitoris, and Bartholin's gland
- **72** Vagina
- **73** Uterus
- **74** Cervix
- **75** Endometrium
- **76** Myometrium
- **77** Fallopian tube, broad ligament, parametrium, and parovarian region
- **78** Ovary
- **79** Female genital fluids

Fetal Structures

- **80** * Placenta, umbilical cord, and implantation site
- **81** * Fetus and embryo

Endocrine System

- **82** * Pituitary gland
- **83** * Adrenal gland
- **84** * Thyroid or parathyroid gland(s)
- **85** * Thymus

Neurological System

- **86** CSF (Cerebral spinal fluid)
- **87** Meninges, dural sinus, choroid plexus
- **88** * Brain
- **89** * Spinal cord
- **90** * Cranial, spinal, and peripheral nerve
- **91** * Eye and ear appendages
- **92** * Ear and mastoid cells

Other

- **93** Pus
- **94** * Other
- **95** Multiple Sites
- **99** Unknown

* Only codes marked with an asterisk (*) should be used when a **Site of Disease** (item 16) is **Other**.

Appendix D
Reporting Area Codes

Reporting Area Codes

Name	Alpha	Code
Alabama	AL	01
Alaska	AK	02
Arizona	AZ	04
Arkansas	AR	05
California	CA	06
Colorado	CO	08
Connecticut	CT	09
Delaware	DE	10
Florida	FL	12
Georgia	GA	13
Hawaii	HI	15
Idaho	ID	16
Illinois	IL	17
Indiana	IN	18
Iowa	IA	19
Kansas	KS	20
Kentucky	KY	21
Louisiana	LA	22
Maine	ME	23
Maryland	MD	24
Massachusetts	MA	25
Michigan	MI	26
Minnesota	MN	27
Mississippi	MS	28
Missouri	MO	29
Montana	MT	30

Name	Alpha	Code
Nebraska	NE	31
Nevada	NV	32
New Hampshire	NH	33
New Jersey	NJ	34
New Mexico	NM	35
New York	NY	36
New York City	NO	975772
North Carolina	NC	37
North Dakota	ND	38
Ohio	OH	39
Oklahoma	OK	40
Oregon	OR	41
Pennsylvania	PA	42
Rhode Island	RI	44
South Carolina	SC	45
South Dakota	SD	46
Tennessee	TN	47
Texas	TX	48
Utah	UT	49
Vermont	VT	50
Virginia	VA	51
Washington	WA	53
Washington D.C.	DC	11
West Virginia	WV	54
Wisconsin	WI	55
Wyoming	WY	56

U.S. Island Reporting Area Codes

For information on citizenship and "U.S.-born" for the U.S. Island Areas see Country of Birth (item 12)

Name	Alpha	Code
American Samoa	AQ	60
Federated States of Micronesia	FM	64
Guam	GU	66
Northern Mariana Islands	CQ	69

Name	Alpha	Code
Palau	PS	70
Puerto Rico	PR	72
Republic of Marshall Islands	RM	68
Virgin Islands	VQ	78

Appendix E
Country Codes

Country	Alpha Code
Afghanistan	AFG
Albania	ALB
Algeria	DZA
American Samoa	ASM
Andorra	AND
Angola	AGO
Anguilla	AIA
Antarctica	ATA
Antigua and Barbuda	ATG
Argentina	ARG
Armenia	ARM
Aruba	ABW
Ashmore and Cartier Islands	AT
Australia	AUS
Austria	AUT
Azerbaijan	AZE
Bahamas, The	BHS
Bahrain	BHR
Baker Island	FQ
Bangladesh	BGD
Barbados	BRB
Bassas Da India	BS
Belarus	BLR
Belgium	BEL
Belize	BLZ
Benin	BEN
Bermuda	BMU
Bhutan	BTN
Bolivia	BOL
Bosnia and Herzegovina	BIH
Botswana	BWA
Bouvet Island	BVT
British Indian Ocean Territory	IOT
Brazil	BRA
British Virgin Islands	VGB
Brunei	BRN
Bulgaria	BGR
Burkina (Upper Volta)	BFA
Burma	BUMM
Burundi	BDI
Cambodia	KHM
Cameroon	CMR
Canada	CAN
Cape Verde	CPV
Cayman Islands	CYM

Country	Alpha Code
Central African Republic	CAF
Chad	TCD
Chile	CHL
China	CHN
Christmas Island	CXR
Clipperton Island	IP
Cocos (Keeling) Islands	CCK
Colombia	COL
Comoros	COM
Congo	COG
Cook Islands	COK
Coral Sea Islands	CR
Costa Rica	CRI
Croatia	HRV
Cuba	CUB
Cyprus	CYP
Czech Republic	CZE
Czechoslovakia	CSHH
Denmark	DNK
Djibouti	DJI
Dominica	DMA
Dominican Republic	DOM
Ecuador	ECU
Egypt	EGY
El Salvador	SLV
Equatorial Guinea	GNQ
Eritrea	ERI
Estonia	EST
Ethiopia	ETH
Europa Island	EU
Falkland Islands (Malvinas)	FLK
Faroe Islands	FRO
Federated States of Micronesia	FSM
Fiji	FJI
Finland	FIN
French Southern and Antarctic Lands	ATF
France	FRA
French Guiana	GUF
French Polynesia	PYF
Gabon	GAB
Gambia, The	GMB
Gaza Strip	GZ
Georgia	GEO
Germany	DEU
Ghana	GHA
Gibraltar	GIB
Glorioso Islands	GO
Greece	GRC
Greenland	GRL
Grenada	GRD

Country	Alpha Code
Guadeloupe	GLP
Guam	GUM
Guatemala	GTM
Guernsey	GGY
Guinea	GIN
Guinea-Bissau	GNB
Guyana	GUY
Haiti	HTI
Heard Island and McDonald Islands	HMD
Honduras	HND
Hong Kong	HKG
Howland Island	HQ
Hungary	HUN
Iceland	ISL
India	IND
Indonesia	IDN
Iran	IRN
Iraq	IRQ
Iraq-Saudi Arabia Neutral Zone	NTHH
Ireland	IRL
Israel	ISR
Italy	ITA
Ivory Coast	CIV
Jamaica	JAM
Jan Mayen	JN
Japan	JPN
Jarvis Island	DQ
Jersey	JEY
Johnston Atoll	JQ
Jordan	JOR
Juan De Nova Island	JU
Kazakhstan	KAZ
Kenya	KEN
Kingman Reef	KQ
Kiribati	KIR
Korea, Republic of	KOR
Korea, Democratic People's Republic	PRK
Kuwait	KWT
Kyrgyzstan	KGZ
Laos	LAO
Latvia	LVA
Lebanon	LBN
Lesotho	LSO
Liberia	LBR
Libya	LBY
Liechtenstein	LIE
Lithuania	LTU
Luxembourg	LUX
Macau	MAC
Macedonia	MKD

Country	Alpha Code
Madagascar	MDG
Malawi	MWI
Malaysia	MYS
Maldives	MDV
Mali	MLI
Malta	MLT
Man, Isle of	IMN
Marshall Islands	MHL
Martinique	MTQ
Mauritania	MRT
Mauritius	MUS
Mayotte	MYT
Mexico	MEX
Midway Island	MIUM
Moldova	MDA
Monaco	MCO
Mongolia	MNG
Montenegro	MNE
Montserrat	MSR
Morocco	MAR
Mozambique	MOZ
Myanmar	MMR
Namibia	NAM
Nauru	NRU
Navassa Island	BQ
Nepal	NPL
Netherlands	NLD
Netherlands Antilles	ANT
New Caledonia	NCL
New Zealand	NZL
Nicaragua	NIC
Niger	NER
Nigeria	NGA
Niue	NIU
Norfolk Island	NFK
Northern Mariana Islands	MNP
Norway	NOR
Not Specified	NI
Oman	OMN
Pakistan	PAK
Palau	PLW
Palmyra Atoll	LQ
Panama	PAN
Papua New Guinea	PNG
Paracel Islands	PF
Paraguay	PRY
Peru	PER
Philippines	PHL
Pitcairn Islands	PCN
Poland	POL

Country	Alpha Code
Portugal	PRT
Portuguese Timor	TPTL
Puerto Rico	PRI
Qatar	QAT
Reunion	REU
Romania	ROU
Russia	RUS
Rwanda	RWA
South Georgia/South Sandwich Islands	SGS
San Marino	SMR
Sao Tome and Principe	STP
Saudi Arabia	SAU
Senegal	SEN
Serbia	SRB
Seychelles	SYC
Sierra Leone	SLE
Singapore	SGP
Slovak Republic	SVK
Slovenia	SVN
Solomon Islands	SLB
Somalia	SOM
South Africa	ZAF
Soviet Union	SUHH
Spain	ESP
Spratly Islands	PG
Sri Lanka	LKA
St Lucia	LCA
St. Helena	SHN
St. Kitts and Nevis	KNA
St. Pierre and Miquelon	SPM
St. Vincent/Grenadines	VCT
Sudan	SDN
Suriname	SUR
Svalbard	SJM
Swaziland	SWZ
Sweden	SWE
Switzerland	CHE
Syria	SYR
Taiwan	TWN
Tajikistan	TJK
Tanzania, United Republic of	TZA
Thailand	THA
Timor-Leste	TLS
Togo	TGO
Tokelau	TKL
Tonga, Kingdom of	TON
Trinidad and Tobago	TTO
Tromelin Island	TE
Tunisia	TUN
Turkey	TUR

Country	Alpha Code
Turkmenistan	TKM
Turks and Caicos Islands	TCA
Tuvalu	TUV
U.S. Minor Outlying Islands	UMI
Uganda	UGA
Ukraine	UKR
United Arab Emirates	ARE
United Kingdom	GBR
United States	USA
Uruguay	URY
U.S. Miscellaneous Pacific Islands	PUUM
Uzbekistan	UZB
Vanuatu (New Hebrides)	VUT
Vatican City	VAT
Venezuela	VEN
Vietnam	VNM
Virgin Islands	VIR
Wake Island	WKUM
Wallis and Futuna	WLF
West Bank	WE
Western Sahara	ESH
Western Samoa	WSM
Yemen	YEM
Yugoslavia	YUCS
Zaire	ZRCD
Zambia	ZMB
Zimbabwe	ZWE

Appendix F
Glossary

Term	Definition
Acid-fast bacilli (AFB)	Microorganisms that when stained, retain color even after they have been washed in an acid solution; may be detected under a microscope in a stained smear.
Active case finding	Looking for undiagnosed cases by screening a population.
Active TB disease	An illness, caused by bacteria called *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, in which tuberculosis (TB) bacteria are multiplying and attacking parts of the body, most commonly the lungs. A person with active TB disease is capable of spreading the disease to others if the TB bacteria are active in the lungs or throat. The symptoms of active TB disease include weakness, weight loss, fever, no appetite, chills, and sweating at night. Other symptoms may include a bad cough, pain in the chest, and coughing up blood.
Adherence to treatment	Following the recommended course of treatment by taking all the prescribed medications for the entire length of time necessary.
Adverse effect	Negative side effect resulting from the use of a drug (for example, hepatitis, nausea, headache).
Bronchoscopy	A procedure used to obtain pulmonary secretions or lung tissue with an instrument called a bronchoscope.
Case management	A system in which a specific health department employee is assigned primary responsibility for the patient, systematic regular review of patient progress is conducted, and plans are made to address any barriers to adherence.
Case rate	The number of cases that occur during a certain time period, divided by the size of the population during that time period; the case rate is often expressed in terms of a population size of 100,000 persons.
Case reporting	Informing the state or local health department when a new case (an occurrence) of TB disease has been diagnosed or is suspected.
Cavity	A hollow space within the lung, visible on a chest x-ray or CT scan.
Clinical evaluation	An evaluation done to find out whether a patient has symptoms of TB disease or is responding to treatment; also done to check for adverse reaction to TB medications.
Clinician	A physician, physician's assistant, or nurse.
Congregate setting	A setting in which a group of usually unrelated persons reside in close physical proximity. These settings may include hospitals, long-term care facilities, assisted living facilities, correctional facilities, or homeless shelters (see residential facilities).

Contact investigation	A procedure for interviewing a person who has TB disease to determine who may have been exposed to TB. People who have been exposed to TB are tested for latent TB infection (LTBI) and TB disease.
Contacts	People exposed to someone with infectious TB disease, generally including family members, roommates or housemates, close friends, coworkers, classmates, and others.
Country of birth	The country where a person was born.
Culture	To grow organisms on media (substances containing nutrients) so that they or the product of this process can be identified.
Daily regimen	A treatment schedule in which the patient takes a dose of each prescribed medication every day.
Diabetes mellitus	A disease in which the body's ability to use sugar is altered.
Diagnostic evaluation	An evaluation used to diagnose TB disease; includes a medical history, a chest x-ray, the collection of specimens for bacteriologic examination, and possibly a tuberculin skin test or an interferon-gamma release assay such as the QuantiFERON®-TB Gold test.
Directly observed therapy (DOT)	A designated person watches the TB patient swallow each dose of the prescribed drugs.
Drug susceptibility test	A laboratory method for finding drug resistance in a microorganism.
Drug-resistant TB	TB caused by organisms that are able to grow in the presence of a particular drug; TB that is resistant to at least one first-line antituberculosis drug.
End-stage renal disease (ESRD)	A condition when chronic kidney failure has progressed to the point where kidney function is less than 10% of normal; requires dialysis or transplantation; also known as stage 5 chronic kidney disease. The most common cause of ESRD in the United States is diabetes.
Ethambutol (EMB)	A drug used to treat TB disease; may cause vision problems. Ethambutol should be used cautiously in children who are too young to be monitored for changes in their vision.
Extrapulmonary TB	TB disease that occurs in places other than the lungs, such as the lymph nodes, the pleura, the brain, the kidneys, or the bones; most types of extrapulmonary TB are not infectious.
First-line TB drugs	The initial drugs used for treating TB disease. Include isoniazid (INH), rifampin (RIF), pyrazinamide (PZA), and either ethambutol (EMB). or streptomycin (SM).
Foreign-born persons	People born outside of the United States.
HIV	Human immunodeficiency virus, the virus that causes AIDS.

Immunosuppressive therapy	Therapy that suppresses or weakens the immune system.
Interferon-gamma (IFN-γ)	Protein that is normally produced by the body in response to infection.
Interferon-gamma release assay (IGRA)	A type of blood test that measures a person's immune reactivity to *M. tuberculosis* by measuring release of IFN-γ. In the U.S., QuantiFERON®-TB Gold, QuantiFERON®-TB Gold In-Tube, and T-SPOT®.TB are currently available IGRAs.
Isolate	A sample from a specimen that was identified as a certain organism such as *M. tuberculosis* complex.
Isoniazid (INH)	A drug that is used for treating LTBI and one of the drugs used to treat TB disease; although relatively safe, it may cause hepatitis and other severe adverse reaction in some patients.
Latent TB infection (LTBI)	Refers to the condition when a person is infected with tubercle bacilli, but TB disease has not developed. Persons with LTBI do not have TB disease symptoms and they cannot spread TB germs to others. Persons with LTBI usually have a positive result to the Mantoux tuberculin skin test or an interferon-gamma release assay.
LTBI treatment	Medication that is given to people who have latent TB infection to prevent them from developing TB disease.
Mantoux tuberculin skin test (TST)	A method of testing for TB infection; a needle and syringe are used to inject 0.1 ml of 5 tuberculin units of liquid tuberculin between the layers of the skin (intradermally), usually on the forearm; the reaction to this test, a palpable swollen area (induration), is measured 48 to 72 hours after the injection and is interpreted as positive or negative depending on the size of the reaction and the patient's risk factors for TB.
Miliary TB	Miliary TB is a serious type of tuberculosis infection. It is a histological or radiologic finding, rather than a site of disease. It appears on radiograph as a great number of small, well-defined nodules that look like millet seeds scattered throughout the lungs, hence the name "miliary."
Multidrug-resistant TB (MDR TB)	Resistant to at least the drugs isoniazid and rifampin; MDR TB is more difficult to treat than drug-susceptible TB.
Mycobacterium tuberculosis	One of the organisms causing TB in humans, and sometimes called the tubercle bacillus; belongs to a group of bacteria called mycobacteria.
***Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex**	A group of closely related mycobacteria that can cause active TB (e.g., *M. tuberculosis, M. bovis*, and *M. africanum*). Most TB in the United States is caused by *M. tuberculosis*.
Nucleic acid amplification (NAA)	A technique that amplifies (copies) DNA or RNA segments, in order to directly identify microorganisms in sputum specimens.

Pulmonary TB	TB disease that occurs in the lungs, typically causing a cough and an abnormal chest x-ray. Pulmonary TB is usually infectious if untreated. Most TB cases reported in the United States are pulmonary TB.
Pyridoxine	Another name for vitamin B6; it is given to prevent peripheral neuropathy; should always be given to pregnant and breastfeeding women on isoniazid.
QuantiFERON®-TB Gold test (QFT-G)	A blood test used for diagnosing infection with *M. tuberculosis*. The QFT-G measures a patient's immune reactivity to *M. tuberculosis* by measuring the response to TB proteins when they are mixed with a small amount of blood (see IGRAs).
Recurrence	A patient who has either a • Negative culture result while receiving anti-TB therapy, but at some point after therapy is completed, either the culture result becomes positive for *M. tuberculosis* or the patient has clinical or radiologic deterioration that is consistent with TB disease. **or** • Negative smear and culture result (e.g., clinical case) at diagnosis and while receiving anti-TB therapy, but at some point after therapy is completed, either the patient has a culture result that is positive for *M. tuberculosis* or has clinical or radiologic deterioration that is consistent with TB disease.
Rifabutin	A drug used to treat TB disease; used as a substitute for rifampin (RIF) in the treatment of all forms of TB.
Rifampin	A drug used to treat TB disease; also used for LTBI treatment. Rifampin has several possible side effects (for example, hepatitis, turning body fluids orange, and drug interactions).
Rifapentine	A drug used to treat TB disease; used once weekly with isoniazid during the continuation phase with selected HIV-negative patients.
Second-line TB drugs	Drugs used to treat TB that is resistant to first-line TB drugs (for example, capreomycin, kanamycin, ethionamide, cycloserine, ciprofloxacin, amikacin).
Smear	A specimen that has been smeared onto a glass slide, stained, washed in an acid solution, and then placed under the microscope for examination; used to detect acid-fast bacilli in a specimen.
Specimen	A sample collected from a person for testing.
Sputum	Phlegm from deep in the lungs, collected in a sterile container for processing and examination.
Susceptibility	An organism's ability to be killed by a particular drug.
Suspect	A person for whom there is a high index of suspicion for active TB (e.g., a known contact to an active TB case or to a person with signs or symptoms consistent with TB) who is currently under evaluation for TB disease.

XDR TB	The occurrence of TB in persons whose *M. tuberculosis* isolates are resistant to isoniazid and rifampin, plus resistant to any fluoroquinolone and at least one of three injectable second-line drugs (i.e., amikacin, kanamycin, or capreomycin).

Appendix G
Answer Key for the Exercises

Module A – RVCT (page 1) Items 1-16

#	Correct Answer	Notes for Answers
1.1	**E**	
1.2	**B**	
1.3	**A**	For this item, **the month and year always need to be entered**. But if the exact day is **not** known, enter 99. It is important to read the instructions for entering the dates for each item because they can vary from item to item. For some items enter "99" for the unknown month or day, and "9999" for the unknown year. This may vary from what will be entered into a computer software program. • 03 **99** 2009 – for March, unknown day, in 2009 • **99 99** 2009 – for unknown month and day in 2009 • 01 02 **9999** – for January 2, in a year that is unknown
1.4	**A**	The **Date Reported** is the date that a health department **first suspects** that the patient might have TB or first receives a report (verbal or written notification) from a health care provider. In this instance, the **Date Reported** is January 6. January 10 is the date that the county health department received laboratory results confirming TB diagnosis. January 27 is the **Date Submitted**.
2.1	**B**	
2.2	**B**	**Date Submitted** is June 30 because this was the date that the RVCT form is **submitted** to the reporting area. June 1 is the **date reported** and July 10 is the **date counted**.
3.1	**A**	
3.2	**B**	
3.3	**A**	
3.4	**B**	
4.1	**A**	Laverne receives a new diagnosis in Milwaukee, but is an out-of-area resident and returns home for treatment. The reporting address should be her address in Chicago.
4.2	**B**	Eduardo, a migrant worker, receives a new diagnosis, but is an out-of-area resident. Because of his migrant status, the reporting address for Eduardo should be the area in which he lives at the time of diagnosis, which is Watsonville. In addition, he should also be counted in the area in which he lives at the time of diagnosis (Watsonville), even if he returned to his permanent home in Sacramento for treatment. For more information on determining the reporting address for patients, see the Guidelines to Determine Reporting Address in the instructions for **Reporting Address for Case Counting** (item 4). For more information about how cases should be counted, see **Count Status** (item 5).
5.1	**D**	

5.2	**C**	Because his recurrence of TB disease was within 12 months of **completion of therapy** this recurrence is not considered a separate episode of TB. Initial diagnosis does not factor into this decision. A 2009 RVCT would be completed and in **Count Status** (item 5), Verified Case: Recurrent TB within 12 months would be selected.
5.3	**A**	It is **Yes,** because his recurrence of TB disease is **more than 12 months after completion of therapy** and is considered a new case of TB. A 2010 RVCT would be completed and for **Count Status** (item 5) count as a TB case would be selected.
5.4	**B**	
5.5	**A**	
5.6	**A**	
5.7	**A**	Raul's case is counted as a new case of TB in Arizona because his recurrence of TB is more than 12 months after completion of therapy.
5.8	**C**	Communication between TB control programs to ensure continuity of care and submission of reports regarding a patient who is moving from one area to another should be conducted as securely and efficiently as possible (e.g., telephone, e-mail, secure fax, express courier).
5.9	**A**	
5.10	**A**	
5.11	**C**	
5.12	**B**	
5.13	**B**	A 2009 RVCT would be completed by Georgia listing John's count status in Item 5 as a verified case counted by another area. The 2009 form is completed by Georgia and the 2009 reporting address should reflect his 2009 Georgia address to assess level of burden of a noncountable case. However, Georgia cannot count him in its 2009 case count because he has been counted as a case in Tennessee **within 12 months**. John never completed therapy in Tennessee, so Georgia should assist John in completing therapy, and communicate with Tennessee to provide details for case close-out.
6.1	**C**	
6.2	**A**	
6.3	**B**	
6.4	**C**	The **Date Counted** is the date that the responsible count authority verifies the case as a new case of TB and includes it in the official TB case count.
6.5	**B**	
7.1	**C**	David is **not** considered to have a **Previous Diagnosis of TB Disease** because in January 2009 he had LTBI and not TB disease**.**
8.1	**C**	
9.1	**A**	Health care workers are dependent on the answers that the patients provide, regardless of how the health care worker thinks the items should be answered. However, asking the patient probing questions and reviewing the patient's medical records and other documentation can provide the most accurate answers for biological sex at birth.
10.1	**A**	
11.1	**E**	Joaquin says his mother is American Indian and his father is African American, so the answer is E because both A and C are correct.

11.2	**B**	Trang is Filipino and Vietnamese, which are both considered Asian race. Even though the Philippines are islands in the Pacific, Filipinos are considered an Asian race.
12.1	**A**	When a patient was born abroad to a parent who is a U.S. citizen, the patient is considered "U.S.-born."
12.2	**B**	Because Wolfgang was actually born in Germany, the correct answer is Germany.
12.3	**A**	Bernard is considered "U.S.-born" because he was born in 1 of the 50 states or the District of Columbia. Even though both of his parents were born in a foreign country, he is still considered "U.S.-born."
12.4	**A**	Bernard was born in the United States, so the answer would be United States.
12.5	**B**	Mayleen is not considered "U.S.-born" because she was not born in 1 of the 50 states or the District of Columbia and neither of her parents were U.S. citizens. Mayleen is a U.S. citizen but not U.S.-born. Her parents are citizens of Palau. However, if they had been born in Guam they would be considered U.S. citizens and Mayleen would be considered "U.S.-born."
12.6	**B**	Mayleen was born in Guam, so the answer would be Guam.
12.7	**B**	Jiguna was born abroad to parents who were **not** U.S. citizens. Therefore he is not considered "U.S.-born."
12.8	**B**	Because Jiguna was born in Kenya, the correct answer is Kenya.
13.1	**A**	When a patient is born abroad, the date arrived in the U.S. should be when the patient entered the U.S. for the first time.
13.2	**B**	The answer is B. For patients born in another country, enter month and year first arrived in the U.S. Ken was born in the Republic of the Marshall Islands and moved to Arkansas. Even though his mother is a U.S. citizen and Ken is "U.S.-born," the item is asking when the patient first arrived in the U.S.
14.1	**A**	Although Pim's parents are divorced, in this case it is probably best to enter her mother's and father's countries of birth. The guardians are usually the parents. There are only 2 lines, so it is not possible to indicate 3 people. In another situation, it might be better to list the stepfather; it just depends on the situation. **It is important to identify not only the guardian who has the most contact with the child, but also the guardian who may have a possible risk of TB exposure.** In this case, Pim's father would be a higher priority than the stepfather because he still has regular and frequent contact with her, and he also has a risk factor because he immigrated from Thailand. If the biological father was not at risk of TB and everything else was equal with the stepfather, then the stepfather would probably be listed as the guardian. It just depends on how the state TB program views guardianship and factors that put the patient at greatest risk for TB.
14.2	**B**	
14.3	**A**	Antonio is "U.S.-born" because his father was born in the United States and is a U.S. citizen.
14.4	**A**	The answer is El Salvador because Antonio was actually born in El Salvador.

14.5	**B**	The answer might depend on how the state TB program views guardianship. Antonio's legal guardians are his uncle and aunt, the Trujillos, both born in El Salvador. His birth parents' birth countries are El Salvador (mother) and the United States (father). Following are 3 options for how this item could be answered (depending on the state rules regarding parental care): • If the TB program decided that Antonio still has contact with his father, the relevant primary guardians might be from El Salvador (Trujillos) and the United States (father). • If the TB program decided that Antonio is primarily cared for by the Trujillos, the relevant primary guardians might be from El Salvador (Trujillos). • If the TB program routinely captures data on the country of birth of the pediatric patients' mother and father, the relevant answer might be El Salvador (mother) and United States (father).
14.6	**A**	Since Antonio was out of the United States for an uninterrupted period of more than 2 months, select Yes.
14.7	**B**	Answer No because Regina was out of the United States for an uninterrupted period less than 2 months. .
14.8	**A**	Answer Yes because Lisa was out of the United States for more than 2 months uninterrupted.
15.1	**A**	
15.2	**B**	Ruth's status is dead at diagnosis. Even though she clearly had TB when she came to the emergency room, TB was not suspected until after her death when the autopsy was performed.
15.3	**A**	Yes, TB was a cause of death. Regardless of whether pneumonia was misdiagnosed or was the immediate cause of death, TB was an **underlying cause of death** based on the autopsy. Ruth has a verified case of TB based on positive pathology results on lung tissue, which would be recorded in **Smear/Pathology/Cytology of Tissue and Other Body Fluids** (item 19).
16.1	**E**	TB disease is found in the pulmonary, pleural, and lymphatic intrathoracic sites, so all three sites should be selected. This item is usually completed by an MD consultant.
16.2	**E**	Bone and/or joint is not correct. TB disease is found in both the blood and bone marrow. Choose "Other: enter anatomic code(s)." The anatomic codes are listed in Appendix C – Anatomic Codes.

Module B – RVCT (page 2) Items 15-25

#	Correct Answer	Notes for Answers
17.1	**A**	Select positive if any of the results are positive.
17.2	**A**	January 13 is the date collected because that was the date when the first positive sputum was collected.
18.1	**A**	
18.2	**B**	
18.3	**B**	January 16 was date that the first positive culture specimen was collected. February 16 is the date that the first positive culture was reported.
18.4	**B**	Forbes Diagnostics Incorporated is a commercial laboratory because fees are charged for each specimen processed or test performed.
18.5	**C**	National Jewish Health hospital laboratory is **not** considered a public health laboratory or a commercial laboratory. This laboratory sometimes charges for services, but for the purposes of the RVCT it is categorized as "Other."
19.1	**B**	
19.2	**B**	
19.3	**A**	
19.4	**A**	
19.5	**B**	Any positive result supersedes a negative result in reporting TB diagnostic criteria. Since the results are discrepant (smear negative, pathology positive), Type of Exam should correspond to the result captured as positive. If both smear and pathology are positive, both smear and pathology/cytology should be checked under Type of Exam.
20.1	**A**	
20.2	**C**	The date collected is the date for the specimen that came back positive. The initial specimen collected on October 13 is contaminated. The second specimen collected on October 25 has a positive result, so that is the date used for **date collected**.
20.3	**C**	
20.4	**A**	Public health laboratory was selected because the specimen was sent to the state health laboratory.
21.1	**E**	The result was reported as indeterminate. Although the test was done, it was inconclusive rather than positive or negative.
22.A 1	**C**	Emily's result is **C – Abnormal** because her radiograph shows tiny, well-defined nodules, indicating evidence of miliary TB.
22.A 2	**A**	Alice's result is **A – Normal** because her chest radiograph shows no evidence of TB
22.A 3	**E**	Lawrence's result is **E – Unknown** because he remembers getting a chest radiograph but the **result** is not known.
22.A 4	**B**	Roy's result is **B – Abnormal with evidence of cavitary lesion** because he has an abnormal chest radiograph with a cavitary lesion.
22.A 5	**D**	Frank's result is **D – Not Done** because the radiograph was not done.

22.B 1	**E**	**Site of Disease** (item 16) does not include miliary TB. On the old RVCT, miliary TB could be selected as a **Site of Disease**. However, in this version of the RVCT, items 22A and 22B are the only items that indicate military TB. Since miliary TB appeared in both the initial chest radiograph and the CT scan, the answer is "E."
23.1	**A**	
23.2	**A**	The documented TST was May 1995.
23.3	**B**	
24.1	**A**	
24.2	**D**	
25.1	**E**	Health care worker is the answer because that reason supersedes Employment/Administrative testing.
25.2	**H**	
25.3	**C**	
25.4	**B**	
25.5	**A**	
25.6	**G**	
25.7	**D**	
25.8	**F**	
25.9	**B**	
25.10	**C**	

Module C – RVCT (page 3) Items 26-37

#	Correct Answer	Notes for Answers
26.1	**A**	
27.1	**B**	Yes, because he was homeless at some time during the past year.
28.1	**C**	Local jail is the answer because he was at Lanner County Jail when the **diagnostic evaluation** was performed, even though the result did not come back until he was in the ICE Detention Center.
29.1	**A**	At the time of diagnosis, Gladys is living at home, not at the nursing facility. She may have acquired TB while she lived at the nursing home, but that is not where she was diagnosed. In addition, Gladys was not evaluated for TB when she was at the nursing facility.
30.1	**E**	
30.2	**G**	
30.3	**H**	
30.4	**C**	
30.5	**A**	
30.6	**D**	
30.7	**B**	
30.8	**F**	
30.9	**A**	
31.1	**B**	Even though Chaz denies that he injects drugs, his record shows that he was in an injecting drug detoxification program within the past year.
32.1	**A**	According to Spider, he used non-injecting drugs in the past, but not within the past 12 months. You have to take his word for this because there is no proof that he did use drugs within the past 12 months, and you do not suspect or see any evidence of drug use.
33.1	**B**	Based on your observations of Jack Daniel, you have seen evidence that he has used alcohol excessively during the past 12 months. In addition, he was in an alcohol treatment program within the past year.
34.1	**E**	
34.2	**A**	
34.3	**F**	
34.4	**I**	
34.5	**D**	
34.6	**B**	
34.7	**G**	
34.8	**C**	
35.1	**E**	
35.2	**H**	
35.3	**C**	
35.4	**D**	
35.5	**B**	
35.6	**G**	

35.7	**A**	
35.8	**F**	
35.9	**J**	
35.10	**I**	
36.1	**B**	The documented date that the patient first ingests the drugs is the date that is preferred. But, in this case study, Thelma was not sure about the date she started taking the drugs, so the next documented date would be the date that the pharmacy dispensed the drug, which in this case was February 15.
37.1	**B**	
37.2	**B**	
37.3	**B**	
37.4	**B**	
37.5	**A**	
37.6	**A**	

Module D – Initial Drug Susceptibility Report (Follow Up Report – 1) Items 38–40

#	Correct Answer	Notes for Answers
38.1	**A**	There are 12 spaces for genotyping accession number. Instructions are to complete the number beginning at the left-most box. Do not add zeros to finish filling the boxes. This genotyping accession number is from the California laboratory because it has the 2-digit year (09) followed by L, then 4 digits. If the genotyping accession number is from the CDC laboratory, it will have a hyphen after the 2-digit year; this hyphen should also be entered into a box as part of the genotyping accession number. If the genotyping accession number is from the Michigan laboratory, it will have RF after the 2-digit year. The last three columns above are the spoligotype, MIRU, and PCR type, respectively. The second column is not a genotyping accession number because it does not fit the numbering format of any of the three reference laboratories. RVCT users should be aware that there may be additional local, state, submitter, cluster, or other identification numbers listed on a genotyping report. RVCT users should be able to identify the genotyping accession number by becoming familiar with the format used by the NTGS laboratory serving their reporting area.
39.1	**A**	
39.2	**B**	Item 39 refers to the first culture positive specimen on which drug susceptibility testing was performed , regardless of which site it was taken from (e.g., it does not have to be the major site of disease). Because the urine culture grew before the sputum cultures, drug susceptibility testing was performed on the urine specimen. Therefore the urine is the **first specimen** on which drug susceptibility testing was performed. That is why July 3 is the answer for 39.1, and the specimen type is urine for 39.2. If the July 5 sputum culture had grown first, drug susceptibility testing would have been performed on that specimen; July 5 would have been the answer for 39.1, and sputum would have been the answer for 39.2. Even though the major site of disease may be pulmonary, this question is asking for the **first specimen** on which drug susceptibility testing was performed.
40.1	**A**	**Isoniazid:** Any resistance is resistance, even if it is low.
40.2	**B**	
40.3	**B**	
40.4	**A**	
40.5	**C**	
40.6	**A**	
40.7	**C**	
40.8	**D**	**Ethionamide:** It is not known if the test was done, so Unknown should be selected. Some laboratories report no resistance, which means susceptible.
40.9	**B**	
40.10	**C**	

Module E – Case Completion Report (Follow Up Report – 2) Items 41–49

#	Correct Answer	Notes for Answers
41.1	**D**	
41.2	**B**	
41.3	**C**	
41.4	**F**	
41.5	**A**	
41.6	**E**	
42.1	**B**	Moved is defined as a relocation of a patient's residence, resulting in a change in local health department jurisdiction. Therefore Johann moved in state, but out of jurisdiction.
43.1	**B**	
44.1	**C**	This question is asking **what is the reason that therapy was stopped, not what is the cause of death**. The autopsy indicated that his death was likely due to an adverse treatment event to INH. However, the reason that therapy was stopped was that Hannibal died, and then it was determined the cause of death was related to TB therapy. If his therapy had been stopped before he died, the answer would still be the same because he died. You would answer adverse treatment event for therapy stopped only for a patient who had not died and his/her treatment was permanently stopped.
45.1	**D**	
45.2	**E**	
45.3	**C**	
45.4	**A**	
45.5	**B**	
46.1	**D**	
46.2	**F**	
46.3	**E**	
46.4	**C**	
46.5	**A**	
46.6	**B**	
47.1	**B**	

47.2	**B**	There always need to be 3 numbers entered into the boxes provided. In this case there needs to be a leading 0 in the first box as opposed to entering "2" in the left-most box. If the number of weeks of DOT is a single digit such as 8 weeks, this would be entered as 008. If the patient has 2 full years of DOT, this would be entered as 104 weeks. **Count the following weeks of DOT for Maximo:** • 8 weeks of daily 4-drug regimen • 18 weeks of 2-drug regimen This equals a total of 26 weeks of DOT. **Do not count the following doses of DOT for Maximo:** • The missed doses on August 25 and 27 when no drugs were given. (The missed doses in August were "made up" on December 8 and 10 by adding an extra week of therapy.) • The week when only 1 dose of a twice-weekly regimen was given on October 6 and missed on October 8. (The missed dose on October 8 was "made up" on December 15. October 6 and December 15 contribute 0.5 of a twice-weekly regimen each, adding up to 1 week.) • The week when only 1 dose of a twice-weekly regimen was given on November 24 and missed on November 26. (The missed dose on November 26 was "made up" on December 17. November 24 and December 17 contribute 0.5 of a twice-weekly regimen each, adding up to 1 week.)
47.3	**B**	**Item 43: Date Therapy Stopped** is December 17, 2009 (12/17/2009).
47.4	**A**	**Item 44: Reason Therapy Stopped or Never Started** is completed therapy.
47.5	**B**	**Item 45: Reason Therapy Extended > 12 Months** is not applicable, leave blank.
47.6	**A**	**Item 46: Type of Outpatient Health Care Provider** is Local/state health department.
47.7	**A**	**Item 47: Directly Observed Therapy (DOT)** is Yes, both directly observed and self-administered.
47.8	**B**	**Item 47: Directly Observed Therapy (DOT)** Use the above calendar to count the number of weeks of DOT. The total number of DOT weeks from initiation of therapy to completion is entered as 025. There were 8 weeks of 4-drug regimen and 17 weeks of 2-drug regimen. Do not count the last week of August, when no DOT doses were given. Then begin counting 7-day periods on September 7. The dose on October 10 (whether missed or self-administered) is skipped, and October 5 and 12 administration forms a DOT week (2 doses appropriately given). Begin counting whole weeks again the week of October 16. The December 12 dose counts as 0.5 dose, but there is no dose to match it with, so it does not form a DOT week.
48.1	**C**	
49.1	**B**	
49.2	**A**	
49.3	**B**	
49.4	**B**	
49.5	**B**	
49.6	**B**	
49.7	**C**	

49.8	**C**	
49.9	**B**	
49.10	**B**	
49.11	**C**	
49.12	**B**	
49.13	**C**	
49.14	**C**	
49.15	**B**	
49.16	**C**	
49.17	**C**	
49.18	**C**	
49.19	**C**	All items have to be checked as either resistant, susceptible, not done, or unknown. You can't leave any of them blank unless the item is pending.
49.20	**C**	All items have to be checked as either resistant, susceptible, not done, or unknown. You can't leave any of them blank unless the item is pending.

For more information, contact

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
National Center for HIV/AIDS, Viral Hepatitis, STD, and TB Prevention
Division of Tuberculosis Elimination
1600 Clifton Road N.E.
MS E-10
Atlanta, GA 30333

Phone (404) 639-8120
Fax: (404) 639-8959